# Oracle® Communications Convergent Charging Controller

Messaging Manager User's Guide

Release 6.0

May 2016

ORACLE

# Copyright

Copyright © 2016, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be errorfree. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.

# Contents

About This Document	vii
Document Conventions	viii

# Chapter 1

1
1
1
3
5
11
12

# Chapter 2

Message Routing and Processing	
Overview	
Paths and Connections	15
Transaction Types	
Routing Class	
SMSCs	
ASP Groups and Parameters	24
Screening Rules	25
Address Domains	27
Congestion Control	29
Triggering	
Routing	31

# Chapter 3

Messaging Manager Screens	
Overview	
Introduction	
Starting the Messaging Manager Screens	34
Services Menu	
User Access Control	36

# Chapter 4

Messaging Manager Configuration Screen		
Overview		
Messaging Manager Configuration Screen		
Nodes	41	
Schemes	45	
Networks		
SMSCs	54	
ASP Parameters	•••••	
ASP Groups		
ASPs	64	

# **Chapter 5**

Messaging Manager Schemes	73
Overview	
Messaging Manager Scheme Screen	
Adapters	
Interfaces	
Paths	80
Path Connections	85
IP Connections	87
SS7 Connections	
Screening	
Global Title Screening Rules	
SCA Consistency Rules	
Screening Rules	
RLV Prefix Rules	
Addressing	
Throttling	119
Triggering	
Routing	

# **Chapter 6**

Messaging Manager Replication Screen	
Overview	
Messaging Manager Replication	
Messaging Manager Replication Screen	
Replication	

# Chapter 7

# 

Overview	139
Action and Error Codes	139
Global Action and Error Codes	140
SMPP	
EMI	144
MAP	
IS-41	
SIP	149
Release Cause Mapping	
Error Mapping	

# Chapter 8

Messaging Ma	anager Routing	Scheme Edit	Control	161
--------------	----------------	-------------	---------	-----

Overview	
Routing Scheme Edit Control	

# **Chapter 9**

Configuration Scenarios	165
Overview	
Mobile to SMSC Messaging	
Application to Mobile Messaging	

Mobile to Application Messaging	
Mobile to Mobile triggering to ACS	
Instant Messaging	
Email	
Glossary of Terms	
Index	222

# **About This Document**

# Scope

The scope of this document includes all functionality a user must know in order to effectively operate the Messaging Manager (MM) application. It does not include detailed design of the service.

# Audience

This guide is written primarily for Messaging Manager (MM) administrators. However, the overview sections of the document are useful to anyone requiring an introduction.

# Prerequisites

A solid understanding of UNIX and a familiarity with IN concepts are an essential prerequisite for safely using the information contained in this user guide. Attempting to install, remove, configure or otherwise alter the described system without the appropriate background skills, could cause damage to the system; including temporary or permanent incorrect operation, loss of service, and may render your system beyond recovery.

Although it is not a prerequisite to using this guide, familiarity with the target platform would be an advantage.

This manual describes system tasks that should only be carried out by suitably trained operators.

# **Related Documents**

The following documents are related to this document:

- Advanced Control Services User's Guide
- Control Plan Editor User's Guide
- Messaging Manager Technical Guide
- Messaging Manager Navigator Technical Guide
- Service Management System User's Guide
- SMS Email Interface Technical Guide
- Session Control Agent Technical Guide

# **Document Conventions**

# **Typographical Conventions**

The following terms and typographical conventions are used in the Oracle Communications Convergent Charging Controller documentation.

Formatting Convention	Type of Information
Special Bold	Items you must select, such as names of tabs.
	Names of database tables and fields.
Italics	Name of a document, chapter, topic or other publication.
	Emphasis within text.
Button	The name of a button to click or a key to press.
	Example: To close the window, either click Close, or press Esc.
Key+Key	Key combinations for which the user must press and hold down one key and then press another.
	Example: Ctrl+P or Alt+F4.
Monospace	Examples of code or standard output.
Monospace Bold	Text that you must enter.
variable	Used to indicate variables or text that should be replaced with an actual value.
menu option > menu option >	Used to indicate the cascading menu option to be selected.
	Example: Operator Functions > Report Functions
hypertext link	Used to indicate a hypertext link.

Specialized terms and acronyms are defined in the glossary at the end of this guide.

Chapter 1 System Overview

# **Overview**

## Introduction

This chapter provides an overview of the Graphical User Interface for Messaging Manager configuration and explains at a high level how Messaging Manager works.

## In this chapter

This chapter contains the following topics.

What is Messaging Manager?	. 1
Messaging Manager Components	. 3
Configuration Overview	
Platform Support1	
Preconfigured Packages1	

# What is Messaging Manager?

# Introduction

Messaging Manager (MM) is a messaging system for mobile networks. It acts as a Virtual Message Point (VMP) for a variety of different messaging traffic (for example: SIP, email, and SMS). Depending upon the role that it is performing, the VMP can act as any of the following:

- Message Service Center (MSC)
- Short Message Entity (SME) that terminates and/or originates messaging traffic
- Email host.

Messaging Manager integrates advanced routing and protocol delivery options with extended service control, in order to support all forms of traditional MO SMS and MT SMS services while retaining flexible support for new types of messaging.

# **Processing model**

Messaging Manager's architectural approach as a Virtual Message Point means that all messaging involves transactions that can combine real time charging with direct delivery to the destination. This is the "new messaging model" that is aligned with the Internet age, and replaces the previous "store-and-forward" model with higher value and lower cost infrastructure.

The VMP processes all message services in real time, but it can integrate transparently with an existing SMSC for store-and-forward processing when real time delivery is not possible. It delivers:

- High capacity messaging on low cost infrastructure
- Very flexible switching and routing serving a multiple purposes
- Proven efficiencies using real time charging and delivery
- Enhanced message services using a service creation environment (SCE)
- Performance gains over existing SMSC infrastructure

• An enhanced customer experience

Messaging Manager provides a broad range of message processing capabilities at both the network layer and at the service layer. To the network it presents standard signaling interfaces to act in the role of:

- SMS-IWMSC (SMS Inter-Working MSC)
- SMS-GMSC (SMS Gateway MSC)
- HLR (proxy and emulation services)
- Email host (with SEI)

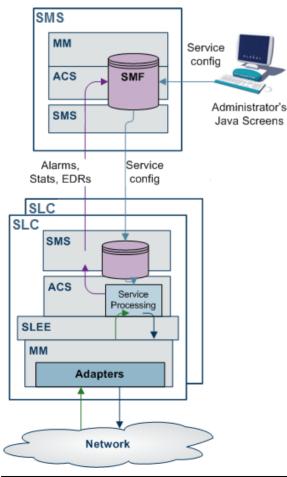
By performing multiple functions in one system, Messaging Manager simplifies the messaging infrastructure and frees up resources.

Messaging Manager components operating at the network layer can route traffic from one communication path to another and will automatically perform protocol translation based on the inbound and outbound communication paths. This can be statically configured through the management UI but can be dynamically overridden during transaction processing by the service control layers. Typically all message traffic arriving at the VMP is processed for charging (if necessary) then immediately directed to the destination. This process of delivering directly to a destination is known as First Delivery Attempt (or FDA).

When huge traffic spikes occur (such as during holiday peaks, or events such as televoting) Messaging Manager can absorb the load and groom traffic to provide smooth processing and near real time delivery.

# **Deployment diagram**

This diagram shows the Messaging Manager deployment architecture.



# Messaging Manager features

Messaging Manager provides the following features:

- FDA (First Delivery Attempt). SMS are directly delivered (through SS7) without going through an SMSC.
- Overload protection from SMS traffic peaks, for example, special events (New Year) or application peaks time (televoting). MM, enables you to offload your SMSCs and protect them from traffic peaks. This enables you to extend your capability to handle extreme traffic peaks in an efficient way.
- Value-added SMS services. These include:
  - Flash messaging
  - Auto-reply
  - Anti-spam
  - SMS copy to mobile or email
  - SMS-MT forwarding
  - Voting campaigns
- Real-time charging
- The ability to provide SPOC (Single Point of Contact) to ASPs to attract more ASPs on your networks and to differentiate your offering on value-added interactive applications

# Messaging Manager Components

## **Messaging Manager components**

The major Messaging Manager components are:

Component	Description
Messaging Manager Multigate	A multi-protocol gateway and multi-function router that can receive and send short messages. Its layered architecture allows all signaling and IP protocols to connect to a common set of service logic, maintaining independence between transport protocols and the user-defined routing scheme that defines the messaging model. For a full description of this component, see <i>Messaging Manager Technical Guide</i> .
Messaging Manager Navigator	A Mobile Station location service that can perform and/or emulate HLR lookups by other components or network elements, caching the results to optimize network signaling and direct SMS transmission toward service logic. For a full description of this component, see <i>Messaging Manager Navigator Technical Guide</i> .
Messaging Manager Director	A set of service control feature nodes that execute as a message control plan and provide enhanced logic for message delivery, routing, and charging and offers extended message attribute controls. For a full description of this component, see <i>Messaging Manager Technical Guide</i> .
Messaging Manager Manager	A central UI for management of routing schemes and message control plans that are used to configure and control all service logic components. This component is fully described in this guide.

# **Messaging Manager Director**

Messaging Manager Director provides complete control over all aspects of the VMP services. Its advanced service control facilities enable extended and customised SMS processing, including real-time billing interaction, by supporting user defined message control plans.

Message control plans can be triggered from Messaging Manager Multigate and include service logic based many properties, such as:

- Incoming path names (that is, protocols and connections)
- Transaction types, such as Submit, Deliver, Notify or Route Info messages
- Originating and/or destination address
- Location of originating and/or destination mobile station
- Message content
- Time of day.

A message can be triggered from Multigate to a specific message control plan to provide extended (customer specific) service logic. For example, Messaging Manager Director may modify any routing options before signalling to Multigate to continue delivery so that Multigate routes the message according to the new options.

Messaging Manager Director can ensure that delivery proceeds only if charging is satisfied, such that delivery and charging proceeds as a single transaction.

## **Messaging Manager Multigate**

Multigate is the core VMP component that provides multi-protocol message handling. It employs a "message model" abstraction that gives enormous power to the service designer in classifying, filtering and routing message traffic. Multigate provides the message delivery and retry logic driven by the message model and dynamic changes made by Messaging Manager Director. The following features are provided:

- Routing for all types of SMS, including protocol translation
- High speed criteria-based classification/filtering/switching
- First Delivery Attempt (FDA) to a destination handset or ASP
- Alternate delivery options for conditional and/or optimal routing
- Forwarding to a specified SMSC or ASP through a load weighted group
- Service logic triggering for charging and enhanced message services
- Service level OA&M support (statistics and alarms) and EDR management

Messaging Manager Multigate can trigger to a message control plan based on different criteria:

- Incoming path (and hence protocol)
- Originating address (or address "domain"), and/or
- Destination address (or address "domain").

#### Adapters

Messaging Manager Multigate utilizes a set of adapters to provide support for different messaging protocols. Available adapters include:

Adapter	Used For
MAP Adapter	GSM networks
IS41 Adapter	CDMA and TDMA networks
SMPP Adapter	ASP/SMSC proxy connections
UCP/EMI Adapter	ASP/SMSC proxy connections
SCA Adapter	SIP connections

During inbound processing, adapters identify the arrival path and translate received messages into a common format used by Messaging Manager.

During outbound processing, routing is based on the path and the message's details and drives the adapter for that path. Each path can have a single connection to a specific machine or it can support multiple connections to the same destination and provide weighted load-sharing across several machines.

## **Messaging Manager Navigator**

Messaging Manager Navigator provides location services for Messaging Manager and performs the following roles.

- HLR location query and cache
- HLR location query proxy with caching
- HLR emulation

Navigator can be called by other Messaging Manager components to query the HLR for the destination switch address for real time delivery of SMS. It then caches the results to reduce loads on the HLR when there is a subsequent query for the same information.

Navigator can also accept HLR query traffic, such as from a foreign SMSC attempting to locate a mobile station, and proxy the request to the actual HLR. On the return path it caches the switch address returned, then substitutes its own Messaging Manager node address as the switch address in order that the foreign SMSC will forward any stored SMS to Multigate for processing. This allows "termination services" to be applied to SMS, and, for example, anti-spam checks, to be made.

Stale cache entries are detected on delivery failure, automatically refreshed, allowing the delivery operation to retry.

#### **Messaging Manager Manager**

Messaging Manager Manager is the GUI-based design and deployment system that allows all service configuration to be created and updated for execution. This component is the major focus of this user guide.

The two main instruments for configuring Messaging Manager are:

- Routing schemes
- Message control plans

Routing schemes define the message model to Multigate and Navigator, including all message classification, filtering, triggering and routing rules. The key to configuring the full functionality of Messaging Manager is understanding the message model and routing scheme concepts described within this guide.

Message control plans leverage off Advanced Control Services (ACS), which is an underlying platform technology for service control. This is where you can customize services by placing conditional logic for service execution within the message control plan. It is also where the transaction management occurs for locking real-time charging with message delivery. You create control plans in the Control Plan Editor. For more information, see *CPE User's Guide*. For information about the available feature nodes, see *Feature Nodes Reference Guide*.

# **Configuration Overview**

#### Introduction

Messaging Manager processing falls into three logical parts. Understanding the different parts is important to understand how to configure an MM service. The three parts are:

1 Incoming classification (addressing) (on page 6)

- 2 Message processing (on page 7)
- **3** *Outbound routing* (on page 9)

## **Routing schemes**

Routing schemes provides configuration which is concerned with service design and message control. Routing schemes are managed from Messaging Manager Manager (hosted on the SMS).

**Note:** The configuration in **eserv.config** provides only the Messaging Manager configuration parameters that are global to the software (or SLC).

Routing schemes define and control the following aspects of SMS processing:

- Adapters (on page 75)
- Interfaces
- Paths and Connections (on page 15)
- Transaction types (on page 18)
- Routing class (on page 20)
- Address Domains (on page 27)
- Congestion Control (on page 29)
- Screening (on page 98)
- Triggering (on page 122, on page 29)
- Routing (on page 31)

#### Incoming classification (addressing)

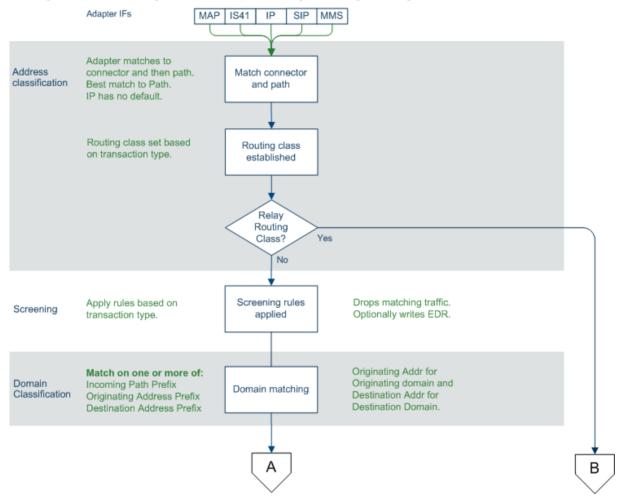
This table describes how Messaging Manager processes inbound messages.

Stage	Description
1	Messages are received over a protocol-specific adapter.
	The configuration of which adapter will be used is done in <b>eserv.config</b> . For more information about <b>eserv.config</b> , see <i>Messaging Manager Technical Guide</i> .
	For signaling protocols, the PC, SSN, GT and potentially the setting of the GPRS support parameters, are used to direct the inbound message to the correct adapter.
2	The adapter establishes the inbound connection and path for the message using the configuration in the currently deployed routing scheme.
	Notes:
	• The adapter matches against the connections in the paths which have been configured to be available to it.
	The best match is used.
	IP protocols do not have a default path.
	For more information about paths and connections, see <i>Paths and Connections</i> (on page 15).
3	A default routing class is assigned to the message, based on its transaction type. Each transaction is classified as one of Submit, Deliver, Notify, Route Info or Command.
	<b>Exception:</b> If the message has a command routing class, it will be forwarded directly to the configured default path for that protocol. For more information, see <i>Default routing</i> (on page 32).
	For more information about routing classes, see Routing Class (on page 20).
4	Each message is assigned to a default SMSC. Operations performed by Messaging Manager will take place in a fashion consistent with the assigned SMSC name.

Stage	Description
	For more information, see SMSCs (on page 24).
5	Screening options are applied, which potentially filter out undesired messages.
	For more information about screening configuration, see Screening Rules (on page 25).
6	The originating address and destination addresses are matched against address rules to determine the originating domain name and the destination domain names.
	For more information about addressing rules, see Address Domains (on page 27).

# Incoming classification diagram

This diagram shows the logic involved in processing incoming messages.



#### Message processing

This table describes how Messaging Manager processes messages.

Stage	Description
1	Based on the criteria assigned by the classification rules, the message is checked by congestion control. This may result in transactions being throttled. For more information about throttling, see <i>Congestion Control</i> (on page 29).

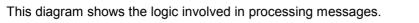
# Stage Description 2 Based on the transaction type, messages are then directed to one of four sets of trigger rules, for Submit, Deliver, Notify or Route Info transactions. This may result in triggering to ACS to run a message control plan in order to control delivery processing options. Control plans can change message parameters. Having selected a best match trigger rule it is possible to modify the transaction's routing class from its default value (assigned during incoming classification). A matching trigger rule may be one of the following: Perform an action Trigger to ACS to run a control plan For more information about triggering, see *Triggering* (on page 122, on page 29).

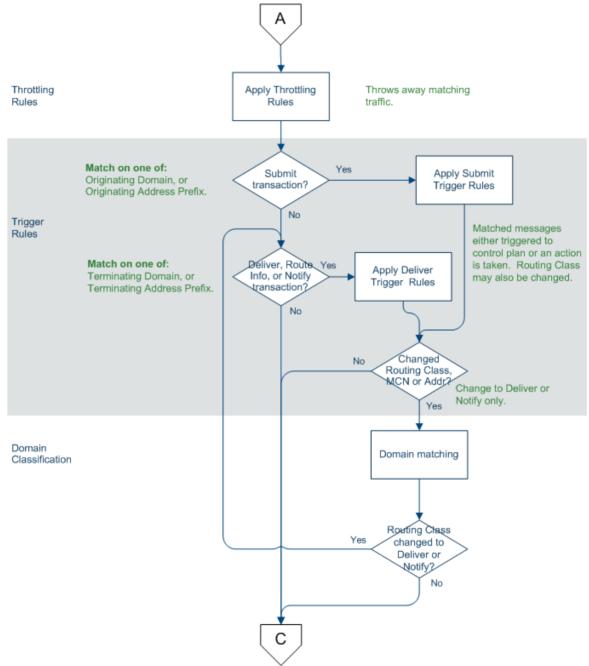
3

If the message was triggered to a control plan, and the control plan returned a release INAP (that is, the control plan exited after a Disconnect node, or an error exit), the ACS release cause is mapped to an action or error code. The action or error code is added to a Nack which is returned to the source of the message.

For more information about action and error codes, see *Messaging Manager Action and Error Codes* (on page 139).

# Message processing diagram





# **Outbound routing**

This table describes how Messaging Manager processes outbound message routing.

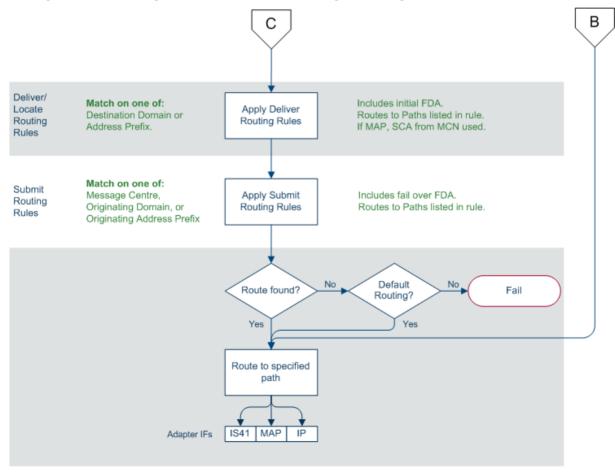
Stage	Description
1	Outbound routing takes place based on the routing class. When applying:

Stage	Description		
	<ul> <li>Submit routing, the key determinant of the outbound path is the message center name and the originating or domain address.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Deliver routing, the key determinant of the outbound path is the destination domain name or prefix, and/ or originating domain name or prefix.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Locate routing, the key determinant of the outbound path is the destination domain name or prefix, and/ or originating domain name or prefix.</li> </ul>		
	For more information about routing, see <i>Routing</i> (on page 31).		
2	One or more outbound paths may be selected by the routing rule. If there is more than one, then each is tried in turn, until "success" occurs, or a permanent error is encountered.		
3	The adapter for each selected path will build the appropriate PDU, based on the path protocol, and select a connection within the path for transmission.		
4	If a message control plan is active, it will be notified of the outcome from outbound routing to complete any service logic, such as finalize charging, retry by switching to an alternate		

# **Outbound routing diagram**

route.

This diagram shows the logic involved in outbound routing of messages.



# Interfaces and nodes

Routing nodes can provide connections for one of the following:

- All IP connections of a routing scheme
- Connections only for certain ASPs

This means a connection does not need to support all the capabilities of its associated routing scheme in order to be a valid connection.

Routing schemes can be configured with interface records. An interface record is a virtual IP connection that may be supplied or instantiated by real IP addresses on one or more routing nodes. Each node can assign a different IP address to an interface record.

Routing nodes are configured with a list of real 'IP addresses'. When a routing scheme is assigned to a routing node, you can map any of the routing scheme interfaces to the node's IP addresses. This defines what (if any) contribution that node makes to the scheme's routing interface requirements.

# When is a Delivery Report produced?

Delivery Reports are generated and sent as a completely separate transaction (like other SMSs that Messaging Manager handles). That means existing routing and retry functionality can be used to deliver the DR.

Messaging Manager generates a delivery report (DR) in the following conditions:

- An 'early acknowledged' message is subsequently unable to be delivered. Messaging Manager can be configured to generate a delivery report regardless of whether or not the originator requested it (through the alwaysProduceNonDeliveryReceipt parameter).
- If Messaging Manager successfully delivers a message by FDA and the originating party requested a delivery receipt, then a delivery report is generated and sent to the originator

# **Platform Support**

# **ACS description**

Advanced Control Services (ACS) provides a call state model and service control platform for the message control plans used by MM Director to provide enhanced services.

ACS is an application support platform that allows many different types of service logic to be implemented in a common fashion. ACS runs on the Service Logic Execution Environment (SLEE). It provides the container for service logic execution in the form of user defined service control plans, as well as providing various mobile and telephony support functions. Hence ACS provides a foundation technology for users to develop and execute customer specific service logic for all forms of voice, messaging, and data services.

Service logic developed by the user is executed as an ACS service control plan. In MM service control plans are referred to as a message control plans. Message control plans are created through the ACS ACS Control Plan Editor.

# **CPE** description

The ACS Control Plan Editor (CPE) is a graphical interface that allows the user to build service control plans. This allows the user to define multiple message control plans to implement the various message services. The CPE provides many tools that allow the user to route messages according to such factors as originating and destination addresses, MNP information, geographic location, time of day, and to collect statistical information from the message during delivery processing.

For information about the features available in the CPE, see CPE User's Guide.

For information about the Messaging Manager feature nodes, see *Feature Nodes Reference Guide*.

## Message control plan

A message control plan is similar to a flow chart. It defines the decisions and actions made to determine the routing of a message. Exactly the same technology is used in routing voice and data calls.

A message control plan consists of multiple different decision points or actions called feature nodes. Each feature node has one entry point that is invoked after exiting a previous feature node, but may have multiple output paths. Each output path can be connected to different "next" feature node so that a directed graph is created where there are many different paths possible. Based on decisions made at execution time, each message delivery transaction will follow just one path. This means that it is simple to create services for message processing with user defined branches and actions, (that is, conditional service logic).

A message control plan can be as simple or as complex as required.

# **Preconfigured Packages**

## Introduction

Upon installation, you can install each of the following pre-configured packages automatically on each target machine. You can use the default services provided as-is, or as examples.

- EDR Express Delivery Routing
- PME Personal Message Exchange
- SAF SMS Anti Fraud
- VAS Value Added Services

#### Package structure

This table describes the components configured with each package.

Component	EDR	PME	Home Routing	SAF
SS7	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Inbound MO	Yes			Yes
Outbound MO	Yes			Yes
VAS	Yes			Yes
Inbound MT		Yes	Yes	Yes
Outbound MT	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Internet		Yes		
EDR	Yes			
PME		Yes		
SAF				Yes

# Components

This table describes the function of each field.

Component	Description
SS7	MAP/CDMA adapter.

Component	Description		
Inbound MO	MAP/CDMA SME path (already created by SS7 component)		
	Set local domain if match local network prefix		
Inbound MT	<ul> <li>MAP/CDMA MC In path (already created by SS7 component)</li> </ul>		
	Set default routing path to built-in SME		
	Set destination domain to local.		
Outbound MO	MAP/CDMA MC Out path, set as default routing path for corresponding SME path.		
Outbound MT	MAP/CDMA SME path (already created by SS7 component).		
VAS	SMPP/EMI adapter		
	SME path/connection for each ASP.		
	<ul> <li>If IP address specified for SMSC, create MC path/connection and make default</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>routing path for ASPs.</li> </ul>		
Internet	Email / IM adapters and paths, configured to match the SCA and SEI applications.		
PME	Trigger all local MT to PME control plan		
	<ul> <li>Trigger MO to (enhanced) direct SMS to email / IM to the corresponding control plan. Maybe needs to be another package or component.</li> </ul>		
	<ul> <li>Trigger all other MO to control plan that does direct delivery only, but EDR triggering takes precedence. This isn't necessary as we have to intercept MT from the local SMSC anyway, but is more efficient.</li> </ul>		
	Definition of profile tags.		
	For more information, refer to Personal Message Exchange.		
EDR	Trigger all MO to control plan that does FDA.		
SAF	Turn on all screening rules		
	Default routing of inbound MO messages will apply.		

# **Default control plans**

This table describes the function of each default control plan.

Control Plan	Description	More Information
Direct_Delivery	Sets message routing class to 'Deliver' and then attempts to deliver it.	<i>Routing Class</i> (on page 20).
EDR	Sets message routing class to 'FDA' and then attempts to deliver it.	<i>Routing Class</i> (on page 20).
Email_to_SMS	Takes incoming email messages and translates parameters and addresses in order to allow SMS delivery. Included as a sub-control plan in PME_Delivery.	
Enhanced_SMS_to_Email	Looks up the last digit of the destination address (number) and sends the message as an email to the	MM IM/Email.

Control Plan	Description	More Information
	corresponding email address book entry.	
Enhanced_SMS_to_IM	Looks up the last digit of the destination address (number) and sends the message as an IM to the corresponding IM address book entry.	MM IM/Email.
IM_to_SMS	Takes incoming IM messages and translates parameters and addresses in order to allow SMS delivery. Included as a sub-control plan in PME_Delivery.	<i>Instant Messaging</i> (on page 219)
PME_Delivery	General delivery control plan with PME functionality.	PME Delivery.
PME_Provisioning	Interprets the SMS and sets PME configuration items for the subscriber.	PME Provisioning.
SMS_Submit	Classifies incoming submit messages by type (SMS, IM or email) and processes IM and email addresses for messages of those types.	
SMS_to_Email	Takes the first word of the message body as an email address, and sends an email to that address with the rest of the SMS message body as the email message body.	SEI Technical Guide
SMS_to_IM	Takes the first word of the message body as an IM address, and sends an IM to that address with the rest of the SMS message body as the IM message body.	Instant Messaging (on page 219)
SMS_to_IM_via_TAN	This control plan will be set to trigger on numbers in the temporary access number range. The destination address (temporary access number) is looked up, and the associated IM address is used to send the message on as an IM. Included as a sub-control plan in SMS Submit.	

Refer to PME Control Plan Scenarios for examples of these control plans.

Chapter 2

# **Message Routing and Processing**

# Overview

## Introduction

This chapter explains how Messaging Manager routes and processes messages and the key concepts involved in understanding the routing and processing configuration options available in the GUI.

# In this chapter

This chapter contains the following topics.

Paths and Connections	15
Transaction Types	
Routing Class	
SMSCš	
ASP Groups and Parameters	24
Screening Rules	
Address Domains	27
Congestion Control	29
Triggering	
Routing	

# **Paths and Connections**

# Introduction

All message traffic entering and leaving the VMP does so through a communication channel known as a **path**. A path is a logical entity that contains one or more **connections** of the same type.

# Paths

Paths are a simple abstraction concept which is used when configuring the rest of the system. By mapping connections to paths the complexity of each connection is encapsulated and hidden within the path itself. The path then becomes the "communication port" visible to other parts of the messaging processing model.

Each path has a name. Using a naming convention for paths helps to manage the configuration (for example: paths are the means of identifying where traffic is being routed, and paths are also the lowest level at which statistics can be collected).

#### Inbound paths

All inbound traffic is assigned an inbound path based on the path configuration and the message details (including which adapter the message arrived over). The inbound path enables the user to categorize and manage the message in the Messaging Manager configuration. Inbound paths can be used to treat message services in different ways, even where the messages are almost identical to those arriving on other paths.

**Example:** Given a specific address (such as the short code "123") it is possible to assign a different address domain name based on the inbound path, effectively providing multiple address spaces.

#### **Outbound paths**

All outbound routing functions take through a selected path.

**Warning:** Since a path may have multiple connections, it is important that each connection within an outbound path can be used to reach the same destination(s), otherwise the configuration may result in frequent routing failures.

#### Connections

Connections define the details required to connect to another entity on the network which handles short messages. All short message traffic in or out of the VMP will occur through a connection.

Because Messaging Manager supports multiple messaging protocols which require different configuration, connections have complex configuration, which is different depending on the protocol used.

Connections may be:

- Socket-based IP connections, as are used for communication between an ASP and SMSC. Socketbased protocols (such as SMPP and EMI) are straightforward. Each connection corresponds to a TCP connection in the underlying transport layer.
- Signaling-based virtual connections that are used between network elements. Signaling protocols are considered virtual connections because they do not correspond to the underlying (SUA/SIGTRAN) transport layer connections. Instead, they relate to network elements addressed within the SCCP layer (and above) and the ability to use a TCAP transaction as a temporary connection for the purpose of message transmission.

# **IP** paths

Each IP connection is associated with a path, but a path may have many connections that can provide the same service.

For example, an ASP may have several machines that can be used to provide a common set of contentbased services. Messaging Manager Multigate can have a separate connection configured to each server so that any load can be shared across these servers. If one server is unavailable, this is transparent to the system as a whole, and hence the service is not impacted. To achieve transparent failover, all IP connections available to an ASP should be configured in a single path. As long as one connection is open, then the path is available and the service is also available. Load distribution is defined by setting a weighting for each server in the path.

To simulate ASP connections to an SMSC, each separate ASP service may need its own path and connection(s) defined between Messaging Manager Multigate and the SMSC. By doing this, Messaging Manager will appear to be a range of ASPs to the SMSC and the administrator can define how the ASP-Multigate paths map to the Multigate-SMSC paths. This may be one of:

- 1:1, to proxy traffic through from a "real" ASP to the SMSC and vice versa
- N:1 to aggregate ASP traffic down to one (or a few) connections to an SMSC

# **Signalling paths**

Because all destinations can be reached through the signaling network, connections and paths can be used to partition communication across all the network elements into separately-manageable streams. These are known as signaling paths.

#### Outbound

**Example:** A network has several SMSCs that can be used for store-and-forward processing. To configure them correctly, you need to decide how you want to control the traffic that is sent to each individual SMSC.

- If the SMSCs are to be used as a group of redundant store-and-forward nodes, then they can be represented as connections on a single path. Each SMSC connection can be given a weighting so that the path will be used to distribute traffic according to available capacity. In this manner it is simple to process the "submit" traffic and route it for store-and-forward processing while hiding the complex details about the SMSC cluster from the Messaging Manager system behind a single path.
- To route traffic to SMSCs based on specific transaction properties, each SMSC should be configured on a separate path. This enables routing decisions to be made and traffic to be conditionally directed to the appropriate path.

For other network destinations (predominantly traffic direct to subscriber handsets through an MSC), it is possible to have a single path that can reach all destinations. However, this traffic can also be arbitrarily split into more than one path, to enable other functionality such as collecting statistics for different destinations.

#### Inbound

Many inbound classification and filtering rules use the inbound path as a discriminator. Consequently inbound paths must be defined with downstream service logic in mind.

**Example:** Subscribers may be given a Service Center Address (SCA) as part of the subscribed service profile. This is then transmitted in each SMS sent through the VMP. The SCA value can be used to match a signaling connection, and hence an inbound path. Other SCCP parameters, such as the SSN, the Point Code, or the Global Title Address can also be used to match incoming traffic onto virtual connections and inbound paths. So, although all signalling is received over a set of SIGTRAN links, the traffic can be divided into various streams by the administrator and assigned to different inbound paths. So Messaging Manager can implement a "Virtual SMSC" by mapping the incoming SCA onto a path, then treating traffic arriving over that path in a special manner.

# **Connection and path identification**

Each adapter instance receives messages on one of many different connections defined for that adapter instance. Whenever an inbound message is received, the adapter must determine which connection the message arrived on, and map the connection to the associated inbound path.

For IP protocols (SMPP, EMI, and SIP), this is straightforward because the TCP connection on which a message is received correlates directly with a configured logical connection. A relationship between the TCP connection and the logical connection is established when the TCP connection is created.

For SS7 protocols (IS41 and MAP), there is no persistent connection across messages, so instead, Messaging Manager matches a logical connection to a message by comparing the SCCP address of the originating node (contained in the message) with the list of defined connections. Once the best match is established, it is used to identify the inbound path for that message.

A MAP connection is considered a match for an:

- MO-FSM message if its:
  - GT, SSN, PC match the message's SCCP CgPA parameter
  - SCA is a exact match of the message's RP-DA parameter
- MT-FSM message if its:
  - GT, SSN, PC match the message's SCCP CgPA parameter
  - SCA is an exact match of the message's RP-OA parameter

Only one path and connection can be assigned.

# SS7 connection matching rules

Since Messaging Manager allows the value "ANY" to be used in a connection's GT, SSN and PC specification, the potential exists for many matches. This table shows the set of rules for identifying the best match on a connection.

Precedence	RP-DA (MO-FSM) RP-OA (MT-FSM)	CgPA PC	CgPA SSN	CgPA GT
1 (best match)	Exact Match	Exact Match	Exact Match	Prefix Match
2	Exact Match	Exact Match	Exact Match	ANY
3	Exact Match	Exact Match	ANY	Prefix Match
4	Exact Match	Exact Match	ANY	ANY
5	Exact Match	ANY	Exact Match	Prefix Match
6	Exact Match	ANY	Exact Match	ANY
7	Exact Match	ANY	ANY	Prefix Match
8	Exact Match	ANY	ANY	ANY
9	ANY	Exact Match	Exact Match	Prefix Match
10	ANY	Exact Match	Exact Match	ANY
11	ANY	Exact Match	ANY	Prefix Match
12	ANY	Exact Match	ANY	ANY
13	ANY	ANY	Exact Match	Prefix Match
14	ANY	ANY	Exact Match	ANY
15	ANY	ANY	ANY	Prefix Match
16 (worst match)	ANY	ANY	ANY	ANY

# **Transaction Types**

# Introduction

The Messaging Manager Multigate system handles inbound messages slightly differently based on the transaction type, and assigns a different default routing class to each one. The routing class is the primary control value for determining how the message will be subsequently handled for onward routing.

Regardless of which path is assigned, all inbound messages are classified as being one of the transaction types in this table.

Transaction Type	Description
Submit	MO SMS from a handset or Submit from an ASP.
Deliver	<ul> <li>Any of:</li> <li>MT SMS from a foreign SMSC</li> <li>local SMSC (including sending to an ASP)</li> <li>FDA</li> </ul>
Notify	All delivery receipts.
Route Info	HLR every request to determine the MSC that is serving a handset.
Command	All other message types.

Note: IP protocols use terms Submit and Deliver, SS7 uses MO and MT.

# Submit type

A **Submit** transaction refers to a message that is being introduced into the messaging network (for example: MAP MO\_FSM, IS41 SMDPP (Submit), SMPP submit\_sm or EMI). These messages originate from a subscriber on the network or from an external ASP connected to the network. Typically these messages need to be authorized and are subject to charging operations.

When the message first passes through the detection point in Messaging Manager Multigate, Submit transactions are assigned a routing class of "Submit".

To provide extended service control for Submit transactions, including charging and/or routing control, the customer may implement one or more message control plans that are triggered through the Submit trigger rules.

# **Deliver type**

A **Deliver** transaction refers to any attempt to deliver a message directly to the destination address (for example: MAP MT\_FSM, IS41 SMDPP (Deliver), SMPP deliver\_sm or EMI). This may occur during the First Delivery Attempt (FDA) that takes place from within Messaging Manager Multigate during a Submit transaction processing, or due to any subsequent delivery attempt that is intercepted from the network. Messages that are delivery attempts from a foreign SMSC may be redirected to Multigate by Navigator and will enter the system as a Deliver transaction.

When the message first passes through the detection point in Messaging Manager Multigate, Deliver transactions are assigned a routing class of "Deliver".

To provide extended service control for Deliver transactions, the customer may implement one or more message control plans that are triggered through the Deliver trigger rules.

# Notify type

A **Notify** transaction refers to a delivery receipt (DR) message. These are typically intercepted by Messaging Manager Multigate after an SMSC completes its final delivery attempt (successful or not) and purges the SMS.

When the message first passes through the Detection Point in Messaging Manager Multigate, Notify transactions are assigned a routing class of "Deliver".

To provide extended service control for Notify transactions (including refunds on non-delivery), the customer may implement one or more SMS Service Plans that are triggered through the Notify trigger rules.

# RouteInfo

The **RouteInfo** transaction is a request which is sent to an HLR to determine information regarding a destination handset prior to send SS7 deliver transactions. Information can include:

- The address of the MSC currently serving the handset
- GPRS subscription information
- IMSI
- LMSI
- MIN
- ESN

# Command type

All other messages are considered Command transactions and are assigned a routing class of "Relay".

**Note:** These messages do not undergo further processing, but are immediately directed to the default outbound routing path that was configured for the message's inbound path.

#### Summary

To summarize, when a message passes through a detection point it is assigned, each transaction is assigned the following default routing class.

Transaction	Routing Class
Submit	Submit
Deliver	Deliver
Notify	Deliver
Route Info	Locate
Command	Relay

# **Routing Class**

## Introduction

Routing classes are the message attribute which has the greatest impact on outbound routing control. The routing class is first assigned a default value based on the transaction type (for more information, see *Transaction Types* (on page 18)). The default routing class can be overridden by subsequent service logic and set to a new value. Assigning new routing classes enables dynamic control over routing.

Although outbound routing is one of the last events in the message model, it is useful to understand routing classes when setting up inbound configuration because a lot of the inbound configuration is used to set up the transaction for its eventual outbound routing treatment.

#### **Routing class overview**

There are five defined routing classes, and each class has its own method of determining "how" and "where" to send a message. All routing classes ultimately result in external operations.

Routing Class	Method Description
Default routing	Uses the default routing path attached to the inbound path.
Submit	Applies almost exclusively to Submit transactions and indicates to Multigate that it should attempt to "submit" (or forward) the message to an SMSC. From the SMSC viewpoint the message arrives in exactly the same manner as if it came directly from the network switch, or a connected ASP. Hence Messaging Manager stands in the submission path to apply enhanced services and acts as an SMS Proxy between the originating party and the SMSC.
Deliver	Can be applied to Submit, Deliver and Notify transactions and indicates to Multigate that it should attempt to "deliver" (or forward) the message directly to the destination. From the destination viewpoint the message arrives in exactly the same manner as if it were being forwarded by the SMSC. Hence Messaging Manager provides enhanced services and acts as an SMSC.
FDA	Applies mainly to Submit transactions and indicates to Multigate that it should perform First Delivery Attempt routing. This means a new Deliver transaction is created and this will drive the Deliver method as described above. However, in the event the Deliver does not succeed, the Submit method is driven for the transaction. Hence the FDA routing class makes use of the Deliver and Submit routing classes in order to drive service logic and external operations.

Routing Class	Method Description
	Causes the RouteInfo (MAP SRI4SM or IS41 SMSRequest) message to be sent to an HLR, using the configured Locate routing rules.

## Behaviour

When performing routing, Messaging Manager behaves in the manner appropriate for that routing class and as expected by the destination. For:

- Signaling paths, where the destination is an:
  - SMSC, Messaging Manager appears to be an MSC
  - MSC, Messaging Manager appears to be an SMSC.
- IP connections, where the destination is an:
  - SMSC, Messaging Manager appears to be an ASP
  - ASP, Messaging Manager appears to be an SMSC.

## Default routing

Messages with the Default routing class are routed directly to the default outbound path configured for the inbound path they arrived on. The outbound path will have the same protocol, but must be a different path.

Default routing rules are configured in the path definition. Any given path may have a "Default routing path" assigned, and (to support aggregation) more than one inbound path can use the same outbound Default routing path.

If outbound routing is called upon to perform "Default routing" routing and no outbound Default routing path is defined for the inbound path, then the transaction is failed.

Default routing routing is used for Command transaction types. When the message arrives, the outbound routing is actioned immediately. Such transactions do not pass through the upper layers of the message model, but are simply transferred from the inbound to the outbound path. Messaging Manager does not process these messages.

It is possible for an inbound path to have no associated outbound "Default routing" path (that is, Default routing routing is disabled for this path). Transactions attempting a Default routing operation from such an inbound path will fail with a Permanent Error and a message is logged to Intensive Logging.

#### Submit

For the Submit routing class, Multigate expects to send a "submit" PDU to a message center. The type of PDU will depend on the outbound path selected, and hence the actual protocol to be used. It does not depend on the inbound protocol.

For example, if it is a:

- MAP path, then a MAP MO\_FORWARD\_SHORT\_MESSAGE will be constructed
- SMPP, a submit\_sm PDU will be constructed

The PDU is then sent over one of the connections available for that path.

In either case, an SMSC is expected as the end-point. The path(s) to be used are configured as Submit rules in the Routing table. These rules mean that a "best match" is made to select the routing entry. More than one path can be defined for a routing entry, and each will be tried until one of the following occurs:

- "submit" is successful
- A permanent error occurs

• The path list is exhausted

If there is no "best match" Submit rule in the Routing table rule, Multigate will attempt a Default routing operation.

Note that Submit routing really only makes sense for Submit transactions.

## Deliver

For the Deliver routing class, Multigate expects to send a "deliver" PDU to the final destination. The type of PDU will depend on the path selected, and hence the actual protocol to be used.

For example, if it is a:

- MAP path, then a MAP MT\_FORWARD\_SHORT\_MESSAGE (MAP v3), or FORWARD\_SHORT\_MESSAGE (MAP v1 or v2) will be constructed
- SMPP, a deliver\_sm PDU will be constructed

The PDU is then sent over one of the connections available for that path.

In either case, an SME (that is, either an MSC or ASP) is expected as the end-point. The path(s) to be used are configured as Deliver rules in the Routing table. These rules mean that a "best match" is made to select the routing entry. More than one path can be defined for each given routing entry, and each will be tried until one of the following occurs:

- "deliver" is successful
- A permanent error occurs
- The path list is exhausted

If there is no matching Deliver rule in the Routing table, Multigate will attempt a Default routing operation.

Note: The Deliver routing class can be used from a Submit, Deliver or Notify transaction.

#### Submit transactions

When used from a Submit transaction, the Deliver routing class requests what is sometimes referred to as a "single shot" delivery. In this case the current transaction is suspended and a new transaction is invoked with:

- The same Inbound Path
- The same Originating and Destination Address domains
- A routing class of Deliver

This new Deliver transaction proceeds through inbound processing to trigger control and may trigger Deliver service logic.

If the Deliver transaction:

- Succeeds, the original Submit transaction is deemed successful
- Fails, the original Submit transaction fails as well

This is why it is referred to as single shot delivery.

#### **Deliver and Notify transactions**

The Deliver routing class is the standard mode of delivery for a Deliver or Notify transaction. The transaction is synchronous with the delivery of the message to its final destination. If the Deliver processing is successful, the Deliver transaction is deemed successful, otherwise the Deliver transaction fails. The originating party is then notified of the outcome through a protocol level acknowledgment.

# Locate

For the Locate routing class, Multigate expects to send a "RouteInfo" to the HLR. The type of message will depend on the path selected, and hence the actual protocol to be used.

For example, if it is a:

- MAP path, then a SEND\_ROUTING\_INFO\_FOR\_SM will be constructed
- CDMA, a SMSRequest will be constructed

The message is then sent over one of the connections available for that path.

In either case, an SME (that is, an HLR) is expected as the end-point. The path(s) to be used are configured as Locate rules in the Routing table. These rules mean that a "best match" is made to select the routing entry. More than one path can be defined for each given routing entry, and each will be tried until one of the following occurs:

- "RouteInfo" is successful
- A permanent error occurs
- The path list is exhausted

If there is no matching Locate rule in the Routing table, Multigate will attempt a Default routing operation.

# FDA

For the FDA routing class, Multigate expects to perform a first delivery attempt of a "deliver" style protocol unit over a path that has an SME (ASP) as the end-point.

Note: The FDA routing class can be set for a Submit, Deliver or Notify transaction.

#### Submit transactions

When used from a Submit transaction the FDA routing class requests what is commonly referred to as a "first delivery attempt". In this case the current transaction is suspended and a new Deliver transaction is invoked with:

- The same Inbound Path
- The same Originating and Destination Address domains
- A routing class of Deliver

This new Deliver transaction proceeds through inbound processing to trigger control and may trigger Deliver service logic.

If the Deliver transaction:

- Succeeds, the original Submit transaction is deemed successful and completes normally without further external operations.
- Fails, then the original Submit transaction resumes by invoking the Submit routing class. If this is successful then the Submit transaction completes normally.

Only in very rare cases will both the Deliver and Submit routing classes fail and result in Submit transaction failure.

#### **Deliver and Notify transactions**

The Deliver routing class is the standard mode of delivery for a Deliver or Notify transaction. The transaction is synchronous with the delivery of the message to its final destination. If the Deliver processing succeeds, the Deliver transaction is deemed successful, otherwise the Deliver transaction fails. The originating party is then notified of the outcome through a protocol level acknowledgment.

# SMSCs

## Introduction

Based on the incoming path, all messages arriving at the VMP are assigned to an **SMSC**. This is a key aspect of Messaging Manager as it acts as a Virtual Message Point (VMP). For each Submit transaction it can attempt to deliver messages as though they came from the SMSC assigned to the transaction and will it will use this SMSC to store undelivered messages, if necessary.

# **Defining SMSCs**

Within a routing scheme the administrator may define as many SMSCs as required. Each SMSC record should correspond to an actual SMSC, or a group of network elements (each may be a separate SMSC) that together implement an SMSC.

The main consideration is that an SMSC has a Global Title Address that is used as the Service Center Address (SCA) in various network transactions. For example, when Messaging Manager attempts delivery to a handset, it will perform an HLR lookup. This is a MAP

SEND\_ROUTING\_INFORMATION\_FOR\_SM in GSM networks and carries the SCA. If the device is not available then the SCA is placed in the MWD (Message Waiting Data) in the HLR and when later the device becomes available the HLR sends an alert to the SCA. Hence this same SMSC is also where the message will be stored by the Submit method.

The SMSC is assigned based on the incoming path, but more than one path (even all paths) can be assigned to a single SMSC. During message control and processing it is possible to change the assigned SMSC, but this is then preserved throughout a Delivery routing and (if required) the Submit routing process.

# **ASP Groups and Parameters**

#### **ASP** accounts

An ASP account contains information about an Application Service Provider (ASP). It records the services it provides and the limits which restrict how it can use the system. ASP accounts are a type of ACS customer, and use the ACS customer profile. For more information about ACS customers, see *ACS User's Guide*.

# **ASP** groups and templates

Every ASP account belongs to an ASP group. ASP groups define the default information for all the ASP accounts within that group. This can be used to streamline configuration by allowing a common parameter to be changed at one point, and automatically propagate that change to all appropriate ASP accounts.

Similarly, ASP accounts can be constructed as a templates. Templates are incomplete ASPs which can be cloned into one or more fully-functional ASP accounts. An ASP account template cannot be used as an ASP account (that is, it cannot be used to create paths and connections in a routing scheme). An ASP account cannot be used as a template for creating other ASP accounts, only templates can be used for this purpose.

# ASP groups and parameter defaults

Any ASP account parameter that is editable at group level can be defaulted to group level (that is, a value is not required for it at the ASP account level). All parameter widgets which can be edited at the group level will be displayed with a **Default to group level** check box. If the parameter cannot be edited at group level, the check box will not be displayed. If the Default to group level check box is selected, the parameter at the ASP account level will be defaulted to the value set at the ASP group level. This value is not saved in the ASP account profile, and any value already there will be removed if and when the dialog is saved.

**Tip:** The value stored at the ASP group level is displayed in a tool tip when the mouse is hovered over the default check box.

# **Screening Rules**

# Screening rule list

The set of screening rules available is different for each transaction type as shown in the following table.

Rule Type	Submit	Deliver	Notify	RouteInfo
Calling Party Filter (on page 25)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Delivery Sequence Correlation (on page 26)		Y	Y	
Destination Address Screening (on page 26)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Isolated Delivery (on page 26)		Y	Y	
<i>Layer Address Correlation</i> (on page 26) (GSM only)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Originating Address Screening (on page 27)	Y	Y	Y	
Roaming Location Validation (on page 27)	Y			

Notes:

- Screening rules are not applied to traffic from any path which has the **This is a trusted path** check box selected. For more information about this check box, see *Path screen fields* (on page 82).
- To use the full screening capabilities, a valid screening license must be purchased. Unlicensed users will only have access to the originating address screening and destination address screening rules.

# Monitoring screening rules

If a screening rule is in monitoring state, the rule is not applied. Instead an EDR is written recording the SMS/call details, and the screening rule ID for the rule which would have blocked the SMS/call.

**Note:** If a rule is in monitoring state, an EDR will be written regardless of whether the **Write EDR** check box is selected for that rule.

For more information about EDR post-processing, see EDR Reference Guide.

# Calling Party Filter

This check is used to:

• Screen out (blacklist) known rogue entities on the network (pirates)

• Allow (white list) known safe entities

A message will be screened if all of the following apply:

- It is received on a path that is does not have the This is a trusted path check box selected
- The "Calling Party Filter" rule is configured for the message's transaction type
- The message's SCCP calling party global title is matched by the screened global title list

When this rule is selected the *Global Title Screening Rules* (on page 105) panel is displayed on the screen.

## **Delivery Sequence Correlation**

If an inbound deliver or notify message is received on a path that is not flagged as trusted and the "Delivery Sequence Correlation" rule is specified, Messaging Manager will compare the message parameters with the corresponding RouteInfo that was previously received. Message parameters are matched as follows, and the message is screened out if any of the comparisons fail:

MT SMS Field	Expected Value
SCCP Calling Party	SCCP calling party of the RouteInfo
SCCP Called Party	GT returned by Messaging Manager in response to the RouteInfo
SCA	SCCP calling party of the RouteInfo

#### **Destination Address Screening**

Destination address screening rules check the digits of the destination address against a configured list of prefixes. For each address prefix, an address rule will specify that the message has either passed or failed screening.

If the address rule is a:

- 'pass' rule, it will assign a destination domain for subsequent processing.
- 'fail' rule, it will specify the action to take.

When this rule is selected the Destination *Screening Rules* (on page 109) panel is displayed in the bottom part of the screen.

#### **Isolated Delivery**

When a mobile-terminated SMS (MAP MT-ForwardSM and IS41 SMDPP) is received, the isolated delivery rule checks that a RouteInfo message (HLR lookup) was received before the SMS. If a delivery sequence correlation rule (described above) is also used, Messaging Manager will check that the details in the two requests match up.

If MSID masking is on, or an Accept action is used, MM responds to incoming RouteInfo messages with a temporary IMSI (or MIN). This means that when a subsequent deliver or notify message is received, it will use the MM-generated IMSI, so can be linked with the previous RouteInfo.

If an inbound deliver or notify message is received on a path that is not flagged as trusted, the "Isolated Delivery" rule will check that the IMSI corresponds to one that was previously generated in response to a RouteInfo. The message will be screened out if this is not the case.

#### Layer Address Correlation

When a message is received, MM can do a basic check to ensure that the parameters provided in the SCCP layer and MAP layer are consistent.

If this rule is used and a MAP message is received on a path that is not flagged as trusted, MM will verify that the prefixes of the following MAP and SCCP address match:

Message Type	SCCP Field	MAP Field
RouteInfo	CallingParty	Service Centre Address
Deliver / Notify	CallingParty	SM-RP-OA
Submit	CalledParty	SM-RP-DA

The number of digits to compare for the SCA Consistency check is determined by finding the longest country prefix matching the address, in the SCA Consistency Rules (on page 106) panel displayed in the bottom part of the screen.

# **Originating Address Screening**

This rule checks the digits of the originating address against a configured list of prefixes. For each address prefix, an address rule will specify that the message has either passed or failed screening.

If the address rule is a:

- 'Pass' rule, it will assign an originating domain for subsequent processing
- 'Fail' rule, it will specify the action to take

When this rule is selected the Originating *Screening Rules* (on page 109) panel is displayed in the bottom part of the screen.

# **Roaming Location Validation**

An additional correlation check can be applied to mobile-originated SMSs (MAP MO-ForwardSM and IS41 SMDPP) to validate that when a message comes from a local subscriber via a foreign network, that subscriber is actually known to be roaming.

If a mobile-originated SMS is received on a path that is not flagged as trusted, this rule will force Navigator to query the HLR to determine the MSC serving the originating subscriber. A message will pass if the Calling Party SCCP Address and MSC address from the HLR match, to the determined number of digits.

When this rule is selected the *RLV Prefix Rules* (on page 111) panel is displayed in the bottom part of the screen.

# **Address Domains**

# Introduction

Each message transaction involves an originating address as the message sender, and a destination address as the message receiver. These are generally E.164 or Short Dial Code (SDC) digit strings.

Messaging Manager enables you to assign an originating domain and a destination domain for each message based on the originating and destination address and/or incoming path. Messaging Manager uses domains as one of the criteria for matching when performing throttling, triggering and routing.

Note: If no domain is configured, the message will use the default domain.

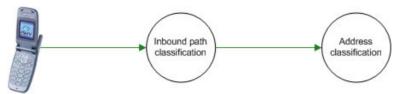
By setting up domains to group addresses subsequent message processing and routing configuration can be simplified.

#### Examples:

- By using one or more address or path prefix matches you may group together all the numbers that belong to a specific operator into a single domain, and then name the domain so the ownership of the numbers is obvious.
- A domain can be defined to contain all "foreign international" numbers.
- For an ASP the same approach can be used to group any SDC numbers into a domain that is named to reflect the service provider.

## **Domain classification**

Here is a simple diagram showing an inbound message going through the domain classification process.



**Example:** If a message arrives with an Originating address of 021 185 3821, Messaging Manager looks up originating address screening and destination address screening rules to find a match.

## **Example address classification**

Path Prefix	Address Prefix	Address Domain
Foreign	1	USA
Foreign	61	Australia
*	031	Telefony
*	035	Teleco 3
Test	0219	Test

This table shows a typical address classification table.

Using the above table, Messaging Manager uses the path and originating address to find a match on the listed prefixes. When a match is found, the originating domain will be assigned from the Address domain for the rule. In this example, the path name of "any" and prefix of 035 results in an originating domain of Teleco 3 being selected.

By using the inbound path name as a qualifier there can actually be many "address spaces" set up for the same numbering scheme. For example, even where the originating address is the same for two messages, depending upon which path the message takes into Messaging Manager it can be placed into a different domain.

As another example, based on the SCA, an inbound path can be assigned (described as "virtual SMSC" support above) and then the terminating address (say 333) can be assigned to a different terminating domain name - one may be "Sport" and another "Weather". This means that the same destination number (333) can be routed to a different application as they "appeared" to be sent to a different SCA and hence Messaging Manager can implement behavior associated with the different SMSCs.

The originating domain name is significant in Submit processing rules and the terminating domain name is used for Deliver processing rules.

## **Congestion Control**

## **Throttling rules**

Throttling rules match on domain and transaction type. A "best match" throttling rule is selected by the transaction and this rule will specify the congestion point for such a transaction.

For a matched domain, it starts to drop traffic when the total traffic is above the specified limit. Matching on domain enables Messaging Manager to throttle different services at different congestion points.

## Applying throttling

The throttling congestion point is simply a percentage value and indicates the point at which this type of transaction is considered to reach a point of congestion in the system and be throttled. The value relates to the overall concurrent transaction limit for the system.

**Example:** By setting a value of 75%, for a given domain (like Televoting) then, in effect, the administrator is ensuring there is a 25% headroom for other types of transactions. Televoting transactions will be throttled when the system has reached 75% capacity and hence a Televoting event cannot cause disruption to all other types of messaging.

## Triggering

## Introduction

Triggering rules provide the core message processing functionality. Messages which match transaction type and domain and/or address prefix are processed in one of the following ways:

- By using a specified control plan.
- By performing a specified action. Available actions are: route, route unchanged, relay, accept, reject, or discard.

Matching messages can also have their routing class changed.

By triggering to a message control plan, extended service logic can be applied to perform more detailed checks and processing on the message; for example, to filter out unwanted transactions (anti-spam function), or to apply charging or alternate routing controls.

The trigger rule also provides the first opportunity to select a transaction in order to apply a new action or routing class, thus changing the default value.

**Example:** If you require all Submit messages to undergo a First Delivery Attempt (FDA), then it makes sense to set the routing class to FDA on the appropriate Submit trigger rules. This means that the message control plan does not need to set the routing class, and if a control plan is not used the processing will continue with the routing class changed to FDA.

## **Trigger rules**

Messaging Manager triggers based on the best match against domain name and address prefix.

- Submit transactions match on originating domain name and address prefix.
- Deliver, Notify and RouteInfo transactions match on destination domain name and address prefix.

## **Message Control Plan options**

Trigger rules which specify that the message is triggered to ACS, nominate or guide the selection of the message control plan to execute. When the control plan returns signaling to Multigate, it can indicate which transaction processing action to take.

Signal	Description
Release	Perform one of: • Accept (reason code 127) • Reject (reason code 1 to 118) • Discard (reason code 126)
Continue (or no control plan matched)	<ul> <li>Progress to outbound routing with parameters unchanged.</li> <li>Will be one of: <ul> <li>Route action for Submit, Deliver or Notify transaction types</li> <li>Relay action for RouteInfo transaction type</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Connect	<ul> <li>Progress to outbound routing with modified parameters.</li> <li>Will be one of: <ul> <li>Relay, Route, or Route Unchanged action from the Attempt Delivery Pending node</li> <li>Route action from the Attempt Delivery Pending with Billing node</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Note: Actions can be specified directly without the need to invoke a control plan.

#### Accept action

The Accept action sends the release cause code 127 to Messaging Manager.

The Accept action does nothing with the message, but tells the caller that it was accepted.

For control plan configuration details see Accept feature node.

#### **Discard action**

The Discard action sends the release cause code 126 to Messaging Manager.

The Discard action drops the message without sending any response to the caller.

For control plan configuration details see Discard feature node.

## **Reject action**

The Reject action sends a specified (default configured value, or feature node configured value, see Reject feature node.) Release cause code to Messaging Manager. The Reject action sends an error back to the caller.

If this is a:

- Submit transaction, the subscriber will see a "Message not sent" indication on their handset.
- Deliver, Notify, or RouteInfo transaction, then the caller (an SMSC) will keep the message for a subsequent retry unless a permanent error is signaled.

## **Route action**

For the Route action, various parameters may have been changed by the service logic within the message control plan. By dynamically modifying parameters in the message control, Messaging Manager provides flexible control over transaction processing. The parameters that may be changed and the effects of changing the value are described in this table.

Parameter	Effects of modification
Originating address	Used to mask or alter the identity of the sender.
Originating domain	Used to modify any routing rules that are based on the originating domain name.
Destination address	Used to alter the destination service address.
Destination domain	Used to modify any routing rules that are based on the destination domain name (perform alternate routing)
Routing class	The routing class can be changed under service logic. This is most effective for Submit transactions to attempt as "single shot" by assigning the routing class to "Deliver", or for performing a First Delivery Attempt by assigning the routing class to FDA.
Message Centre	Used to modify the SMSC name that is used for Submit processing to an SMSC.

## Route Unchanged action

The Route Unchanged action passes messages back to the originating network without modification, for delivery to the subscriber by the originating network. The Route Unchanged action applies only to RouteInfo transactions only. It differs from Route actions only in the following ways:

- When analysing the result of a RouteInfo transaction request, the identity of the sender stays the same, it is not altered or masked.
- Mobile Switching Center (MSC) information is not set in the RouteInfo transaction response.

## **Relay action**

The Relay action is the same as for the Route action, with the Originating SCCP address modified so that the response is sent directly to the caller. This action applies to RouteInfo transactions only.

## Routing

## Introduction

Outbound routing is based on:

- Routing class
- Domain and/address prefix (destination and/or originating depending on routing class)
- (for Submit routing class only) SMSC

In general, outbound routing of messages proceeds according to the assigned routing class for the transaction.

**Note:** Failure either due to delivery failure or due to no path being specified does not necessarily mean that the message will not be delivered. If a control plan has been triggered, and has an active NoAnswer trigger, then we will return to the control plan and it may determine to re-attempt delivery using an other mechanism, or even to retry using the same mechanism.

## **Default routing**

When Messaging Manager needs to force relay a message, it routes it down the default routing path. For more information, see *Default routing* (on page 21).

Default routing paths are used when Messaging Manager has determined that the message can only be delivered through the same protocol it was received on. For example, if a message utilizes protocol-specific features, Messaging Manager ignores the allocated routing class and default routing is performed. Default routing paths always use the same protocol as the inbound path.

## Submit routing

Each routing rule is defined in terms of an originating domain (or address prefix), destination domain (or prefix), and routing class (for example: Submit, Deliver).

#### **Deliver routing**

This table describes the criteria Messaging Manager uses to determine the best match for routing which doesn't follow the default routing rules.

Best Match	Routing Class	Originating	Destination
1 (Best)	Deliver	Longest Prefix	Longest Prefix
2	Deliver	Exact Domain	Longest Prefix
3	Deliver	"ANY" Domain	Longest Prefix
4	Deliver	Longest Prefix	Exact Domain
5	Deliver	Longest Prefix	"ANY" Domain
6	Deliver	Exact Domain	Exact Domain
7	Deliver	"ANY" Domain	Exact Domain
8	Deliver	Exact Domain	"ANY" Domain
9 (Worst)	Deliver	"ANY" Domain	"ANY" Domain

## Determining the best match submit routing rule

This table shows the criteria Messaging Manager uses to determine the best match for Submit message which don't use the default routing rules.

Best Match	Routing Class	Message Center name	Originating
1 (Best)	Submit	Exact Match	Longest Prefix
2	Submit	Exact Match	Exact Domain
3 (Worst)	Submit	Exact Match	"ANY" Domain

Chapter 3

# **Messaging Manager Screens**

## Overview

#### Introduction

This chapter explains how to use the Messaging Manager (MM) screens. The screens are used to maintain the Messaging Manager configuration database.

Because database data related to any screen can be changed at any time, no attempt is made to explain how the various screens and database content work together. For information about how everything works together, see the chapter on *Configuration Scenarios* (on page 165).

#### In this chapter

This chapter contains the following topics.

ntroduction	. 33
Starting the Messaging Manager Screens	. 34
Services Menu	
User Access Control	

## Introduction

#### **Database configuration**

Parts of the Messaging Manager configuration are located in a database. The database is maintained through the Messaging Manager screens.

## **Configuration sequence**

While the Messaging Manager screens can generally be used in any sequence, some screens depend on information configured by other screens. Consequently, the following sequence is recommended:

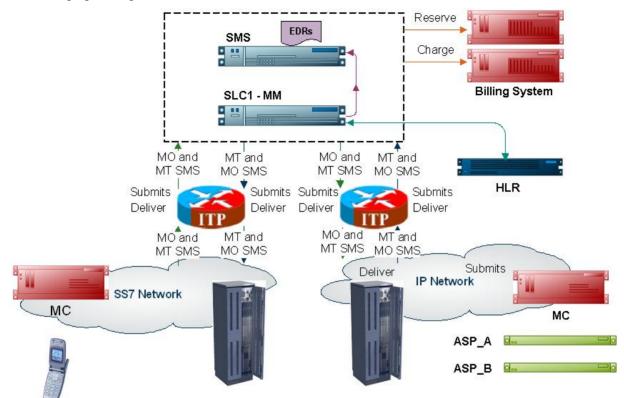
- 1 Add all required adapters.
- 2 Add all required schemes.
- **3** For each scheme, add all required domains
- 4 For each scheme, add all path requirements.
- 5 For each scheme path, add all path connection requirements..
- 6 For each scheme domain, add all address screening rule requirements.
- 7 For each scheme, add all routing requirements.
- 8 For each scheme, add all triggering requirements.
- **9** Add all node requirements.

**Note:** Originating/ destination address screening rules depend on path prefix, therefore advisable to create paths first, although there is no hard dependency.

The screen detail information below is presented in this sequence.

## **Example network**

For the purposes of this document let us pretend that the network entities that are to be configured to use Messaging Manager are as follows:



These details will be used throughout the document as we work through examples of setting up and configuring Messaging Manager to perform standard services.

## **Starting the Messaging Manager Screens**

## Accessing the application

Before you can open any of the Messaging Manager screens, you must log into Service Management System.

For more information about logging into SMS, see SMS User's Guide.

## **SMS Login screen**

Here is an example of the SMS Login screen.

SMS Login	
0	RACLE
	MUNICATIONS work Charging and Control
User Name Password	
Oracle is a registered traden	- 2010 Oracle. All rights reserved. hark of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. trademarks of their respective owners
	OK Cancel

## Logging into SMS

Follow these steps to log into SMS.

#### Step Action

- 1 In the **User Name** field, type your username.
- 2 In the **Password** field, type your password.

#### Notes:

- Passwords are case sensitive.
- You have three attempts to enter a correct username and password before the User ID is locked. If this happens, you must see your System Administrator to re-activate it.

#### 3 Click OK.

Result: You see the Service Management System main screen.

## **Services Menu**

## SMS main screen

Here is an example of the Service Management System main menu showing the Messaging Manager menu options.



#### Messaging Manager menu options

This table describes the menu options accessible from the Messaging Manager menu option.

Menu	Description
Configuration	Provides access to the creation and maintenance screens for triggering, paths, domains, screening, throttling and routing rule configuration.
	See Messaging Manager Configuration Screen (on page 39) for details.
Replication	Provides access to the creation and maintenance screens for MM node replication configuration.
	See Messaging Manager Replication Screen (on page 135) for details.
Action and Error Codes	Provides access to the creation and maintenance screens for MM release cause codes.
	See Messaging Manager Action and Error Codes (on page 139) for details.
Routing Scheme	Provides access to the enabling screen for MM routing scheme components.
Controls	See Messaging Manager Routing Scheme Edit Control (on page 161) for details.

## **User Access Control**

#### Access templates

To prevent unauthorized access, an additional security template for Messaging Manager replication can be found in the SMS application.

For details on creating user access templates and general access authorization, see *SMS User's Guide* chapter on configuring users.

## Messaging Manager User access template

Here is an example showing the Messaging Manager system administrator template for restricting user access to Messaging Manager activities.

Find       Save       Delete       Clear       Close       Help         User       Template Creation       Quality of Service	OSU - User Management		
Template Name       Messaging Mgr Admin       Description       Full access to Messaging         Available Permissions       Allocated Permissions       Allocated Permissions         Available Permissions       Allocated Permissions       Image: Provide the state of the stat	Find Save Delete Clear Close		Help
Available Permissions  Allocated Permissions	User Template Template Creation Quality of Service		
	Template Name Messaging Mgr Admin	Description Full access to Messaging	
	SMS     SMS     SPM     UIS     UPC     SD     Voucher Manager     MMX License Configuration     GreateDelete     ReadModify     ReadOnly     G-MMX Release Cause Configuration     GreateDelete     ReadModify     ReadOnly     G-MMX Release Cause Configuration     GreateDelete     GreateDeleteDelete     GreateDeleteDelete     GreateDeleteD	Apps	

Chapter 4

# Messaging Manager Configuration Screen

## Overview

## Introduction

This chapter explains the tabs that are available on the Messaging Manager Configuration screen and the configuration that is achieved using these screens.

## In this chapter

This chapter contains the following topics.

Messaging Manager Configuration Screen	39
Nodes	41
Schemes	45
Networks	
SMSCs	54
ASP Parameters	56
ASP Groups	
ASPs	

## **Messaging Manager Configuration Screen**

## Introduction

The Messaging Manager Configuration screen enables you to configure resources used by MM. It contains these tabs:

- Schemes (on page 45)
- Nodes (on page 41)
- Networks (on page 52)
- SMSCs (on page 54)
- ASP Parameters (on page 56)
- ASP Groups (on page 61)
- ASPs (on page 64)

## Accessing the Configuration screen

Follow these steps to open the Configuration screen.

Step	Action
1	Select the Services menu from the SMS main screen.



- 2 Select Messaging Manager.
- 3 Select Configuration.

Result: You see the Messaging Manager Configuration screen.

For more information about:

- The screen's content and how to enter configuration information, see the other topics in this chapter.
- How all the information works together to create the Messaging Manager configuration, see *Configuration Scenarios* (on page 165).
- Logging into the Service Management System screen, see SMS User's Guide.

## **Messaging Manager Configuration screen**

Here is an example Messaging Manager Configuration screen.

O SU - Messaging Ma	nager Configuration					
New Edit	Delete Refresh	Ilose				Help
Nodes Schemes	SMSCs Networks ASP Par	ameters ASP Groups	ASPs			
Node			Group	Last Updated	Ву	
cm×43ts3-scp	TS3			05/Jul/2010 11:22:14	SU	~
<b>^ -</b>						<u></u>
IP address		Redirection	Last Upd	ated	Ву	
0.0.0.0				010 09:55:17	MMX_ADMIN	~
192.168.26.232		YES	21/May/20	010 09:16:58	SU	
-my/9te2.scn/(0.4) was	s last updated by SU on 05/Jul/201	0 at 61 22:64 using tar	minal 102 168 25 6	Add	I	▼ Remove

## Naming conventions

As part of the configuration process, names for items such as paths and connections are required.

To make maintaining a large number of configuration items easier, a naming convention should be used, such as basing path names on the destination.

**Example:** For incoming MAP protocol based messages, paths are automatically generated using path names similar to:

- MAP\_MC\_Adapter\_Name
- MAP\_SME\_Adapter\_Name

## Nodes

#### Introduction

The **Nodes** tab allows you to add and change the values for the nodes. The nodes for Messaging Manager to load are established at installation time, and can be the SLC name (default) or any other name entered at that time. The node definition is created with default values that may then be changed through the node configuration screens.

To concatenate user messages, MM needs to be able to process all network packets that are part of a user message on a single MM node. This node is selected based on the B-party address, which will be the same for all message segments.

This is achieved by using a directory function that can map each destination number to a particular processing node.

This makes it necessary for all the MM nodes to be aware of each other and be able to pass a message on to any other node. This is done with a minimum amount of configuration required by the user by putting node data into the existing replicated node table as part of the install of each SLC instance.

## Nodes tab

Here is an example of the **Nodes** tab.

Node         SMSCs         Networks         ASP Parameters         ASP Groups         ASPs           Node         Description         Scheme         Group         Last Updated         By           cmx43ts3-scp         TS3         A         05/Jul/2010 11:22:14         SU	
····· · ···· · ···· · ···· · ··· · · · ·	
mx43ts3-scp TS3 A 05/Jul/2010 11:22:14 SU	
•	
IP address Redirection Last Updated By	
0.0.0.0 13/May/2010 09:55:17 MMX_ADMIN	
192.168.26.232 YES 21/May/2010 09:16:58 5U	

## Nodes fields

This table describes the function of each field.

Field	Description			
Name	A unique identifier of the MM instance. Set during the SLC node installation.			
Redirection Port	The listening port on the node being configured. Other nodes will connect to it using this as the destination port.			
	Note: Default value requested by the install process.			
	The IP address used by the MM instance for communicating with other MM instances.			
	Note: Default value requested by the install process.			
Concat Group	Defines a set of processing nodes that work together to join concatenated messages. This node does not redirect concatenated messages to other SLCs if the group is NULL.			
	Note: Default value is NULL.			
Routing Scheme	The scheme name to associate with this node. This can be any of the configured Scheme names. See <i>Schemes</i> (on page 45).			
	Note: Default value is (Unspecified).			
Interface	Interface record used by this node.			
	These values are configured in the scheme which is assigned in the <b>Routing Scheme</b> field.			
IP Address	IP address of network adapter used for the interface in the corresponding Interface column.			

Field	Description		
	Note: This field can be changed by clicking in the cell.		
Description	An optional description of the node.		

## **IP address fields**

This table describes the function of each field.

Field	Description
IP Address	IP addresses which either are or are not available to be assigned to an interface in this node.
Used for redirection	Whether or not this IP address can be used for redirection. Only one of a node's IP addresses can be used for redirection.

## Adding IP addresses

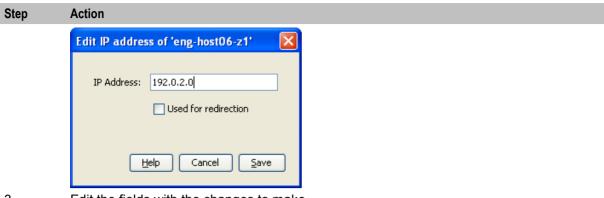
Follow these steps to add a new IP address.

Step	Action
1	In the Nodes tab, select the node to add an IP address to.
2	Click Add
	Result: The Add IP Address to 'node' screen appears.
	Add IP address to 'eng-host06-z1'
	IP Address:
	Used for redirection
	Help Cancel Save
3	Enter data in the fields to configure this record.
	For more information about the fields on this screen, see IP address fields (on page 43).
4	Click Save.

## **Editing IP addresses**

Follow these steps to edit the details of ip address records.

Step	Action
1	On the Nodes tab, select the node which is associated with the IP address to edit.
	Result: The IP addresses available to the selected node will appear in the bottom panel.
2	Select the IP address record to change and, and click Edit
	Result: The Edit IP Address from 'node' screen appears.



3 Edit the fields with the changes to make.

For more information about the fields on this screen, *IP address fields* (on page 43).

4 Click Save.

#### **Removing IP addresses**

Follow these steps to remove an IP address record from a node.

Step	Action
1	On the Nodes tab, select the node to remove an IP address record from.
	Result: The IP addresses available to the selected node will appear in the bottom panel.
2	Select the IP address record to remove, and click Remove
	Result: The Remove IP address ' <i>ip</i> ' prompt appears.
3	Click Remove.
	Result: The IP address is removed from the database.

## Adding nodes

Nodes cannot be added using the configuration screens.

Nodes can only be added at installation time for the SLC being installed, using the host name as the node name. See *Installation Guide*.

#### **Editing nodes**

Follow these steps to edit an existing node record.

Step	Action
1	From the table on the Nodes tab, select the node to edit.
2	Click Edit or double-click the record.
	Result: The Edit Node 'Node_Name' screen appears.

Step	Action			
	🕌 Edit Node 'eng-	-host06-z1'		×
	Name	and herefox at		
	Name:	eng-host06-z1		
	Redirection Port:	7377		
	Concat Group:	Dawn		
	Routing Scheme:	DocTest	<b>~</b>	
		Interface	IP Address	
		NIC_A	192.0.2.0	
		NIC_B	(Unassigned) 49 192.0.2.0	
			192.168.14.156	
			<u>~</u>	
	Description:	Created from Python		
			Help Cancel Save	

3

Edit the fields with the changes to make.

For more information about the fields on this screen, see Nodes fields (on page 42).

#### Notes:

- The Routing Scheme list box lists all the schemes which can be assigned to this node.
- The node name cannot be changed once it is installed. The only way to change is to remove the SLC concerned and then re-install using the desired node name.
- You can change the values of the IP Address column by clicking in the cell to change.

4	Click Save to save the updated Node record in the configuration database	э.

## **Deleting nodes**

Nodes cannot be deleted using the configuration screens.

Nodes can only be deleted by the removal of a SLC.

## Schemes

## Introduction

The **Schemes** tab allows you to manage all the routing definitions for the Messaging Manager configuration.

From this tab you can add or edit schemes, specifying the name and description. You can also edit the scheme configuration by opening the Schemes screen. This is documented in the chapter - *Messaging Manager Schemes* (on page 73).

Note: Schemes are assigned to nodes in the node configuration on the Nodes tab.

A scheme is a set of rules for how to treat and route messages.

These rules define, for multiple protocols, what:

- Paths to use
- Connections to use
- Billing domain to use
- Filtering to use
- Actions to take

**Note:** Only one scheme may be used by each instance of Messaging Manager. However, where several instances of MM are running, each may use a different scheme.

#### **Configuration options**

This table shows the functions to be configured for a scheme.

Function	Description More information			
Adapters	Configure protocol adapters.	Adapters (on page 75)		
Interfaces	Configure network interfaces.	Interfaces (on page 78)		
Paths	Configure the paths associated with adapters.	Paths (on page 80)		
Connections	Configure connections used by paths.	Path Connections (on page 85)		
Screening rules	Configuring screening and anti-spam rules.	Screening (on page 98)		
Addressing rules	Configure address categorization rules.	Addressing (see "Address Domains" on page 27, on page 114)		
Throttling rules	Configure throttling rules.	Throttling (on page 119)		
Triggering rules	Configure triggering rules.	<i>Triggering</i> (on page 122, on page 29)		
Routing rules	Configure outbound routing rules.	Routing (on page 128)		

For more information about how these functions are configured together in a scheme (including the order in which rules are applied), see *MM User's Guide*, *Message Routing and Processing* topic.

## Schemes tab

Here is an example of the **Schemes** tab.

O SU - Messaging	Manager Cont	figuration						
New Edit	. Delete	. Refrest	n Close					Help
Nodes Schemes	SMSCs	Networks	ASP Parameters	ASP Groups	ASPs			
Scheme	Active Nodes	Network	Description			Last Updated	By	
Mobinil SMS GW		Default	For CR 10685	7		22/Jul/2010 13:12:06	SU	^
T53	1	Default				05/Jul/2010 11:22:14	SU	
								•
						Copy Open	🔲 In new w	indow
TS3 (ID 1) was last uj	pdated by SU o	n 05/Jul/2010	at 11:22:14 using ten	minal 192.16	8.25.68			

## **Schemes columns**

This table describes the content of each column.

Column	Description	
Scheme	Name of the routing scheme.	
Active Nodes	Number of nodes using this routing scheme.	
Network	The network which this scheme will use unless overridden by other configuration.	
	This column is populated by the Default Network field.	
Description	Meaningful description of this routing scheme.	
Last Updated	Date and time when this routing scheme was last updated.	
Ву	User ID of last update for this routing scheme.	

## **Schemes buttons**

This table describes the function of buttons specific to the Schemes tab.

Note: Some buttons are only available for some routing schemes.

Button	Description	
⊆opy	Copies the currently selected scheme and all associated data to a new scheme.	
	See Copying schemes (on page 48).	
Open	Displays the selected scheme details for editing.	
	See Opening schemes (on page 47).	

## **Opening schemes**

To view and manage a scheme configuration, it must be opened.

Follow these steps to open a scheme:

Step	Action			
1	In the table on the Schemes tab	, select the record to	o open.	
2	<ul> <li>If one or more schemes are already open, perform one of the following actions:</li> <li>Select the In New Window check box to open the selected scheme in a new window</li> <li>Deselect the In New Window check box to open the selected scheme in one of the current scheme windows.</li> </ul>			
3	<ul> <li>Perform one of the following ac</li> <li>Double-click the record</li> <li>Click Edit</li> <li>Result: The Messaging Manage</li> </ul>	d in the table	_name' screen appears.	
<mark>O</mark> SU - Messa	aging Manager Scheme 'Doc SMS GW'			
New	Edit Delete Refresh Close		Help	
Adapters	Interfaces Paths Screening Addressing	Throttling Triggering F	outing	
Adapter	Protocol	Last Updated	Ву	
CDMA_Adaptor	IS41_CDMA	06/Oct/2010 15:40:59	SU 🔼	
SIP Adaptor SMPP Plugin	SIP SMPP	06/Oct/2010 15:41:15 15/Jul/2010 11:08:52	SU MMX_ADMIN	
			✓	

For details on using this screen, see *Messaging Manager Schemes* (on page 73).

## **Copying schemes**

A new scheme can be added from scratch or based on an existing scheme.

Follow these steps to create a new scheme from an existing scheme.

**Note:** All nodes, adapters and scheme details are copied from the existing scheme and attached to the new scheme.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Schemes tab, select the record to copy.
2	Click <b>Copy</b> .
	Result: The Copy Scheme 'Scheme_Name' screen appears.

Step	Action	
	Copy Scheme	edr_homer_saf_pme_Route'
	This will crea	ut to save a copy of this scheme under a new name. Ite a new scheme with a copy of all existing configuration elements. Ined to the old scheme will NOT be affected.
	Save As:	edr_homer_saf_pme_Route
	Description:	Created by ConfigComponent
		Help Cancel Save

3 In the **Save As** field, enter the name of the new scheme.

4 In the **Description** field, enter a description of the new scheme.

Result: The Save button becomes available.

- 5 Click one of:
  - Save to save the new scheme record in the configuration database
  - Cancel to close the panel without copying the scheme

**Note:** Copying a scheme will copy all the existing configuration elements of the original scheme to the new scheme.

## Scheme fields

This table describes the function of each field on the New Scheme and Edit Scheme screen.

Field	Description	
Name	The scheme name.	
	Note: This field cannot be changed after it is first saved.	
Default Network	The network to use unless overridden by other configuration.	
	The values configured in this field are displayed in the network column.	
Description	Free text description for this scheme.	
Also create default domain	A check box on the new scheme. Select to auto generate a default domain.	

## **Adding schemes**

Follow these steps to add a new scheme to the configuration database.

Step	Action		
1		<b>s</b> tab screen, click <b>New</b> Scheme screen opens.	
	New Scheme	×	
	Name:		
	Default network:	Default	
	Description:		
		▼	
		✓ Also create default domain	
		Help Cancel Save	

- 2 In the Name field, enter the name of the new scheme.
- 3 In the **Description** field, enter a description of the new scheme.
- 4 If you wish this scheme to:
  - Also create a default domain, leave the **Also create default domain** check box selected. This will create domain named 'Default'.
  - Otherwise deselect the Also create default domain check box.
  - Result: The Save button becomes available.
- 5 Click **Save** to save the new scheme record in the configuration database.

**Note:** When a scheme is created, a set of default paths will be created that cannot be changed by the user. These paths are created as follows:

- For each MAP adapter record these predefined paths will be created:
  - MAP\_SME\_Adapter\_Name
  - MAP\_MC\_Adapter\_Name
- For each IS41\_CDMA adapter record these predefined paths will be created:
  - IS41\_CDMA\_SME\_Adapter\_Name
  - IS41\_CDMA\_MC\_Adapter\_Name
- For each IS41\_TDMA adapter record this predefined path will be created:
  - IS41\_TDMA\_SME\_Adapter\_Name
- For each Internal adapter record this predefined path will be created:
  - INTERNAL\_SME\_Adapter\_Name

#### **Editing schemes**

Follow these steps to edit an existing scheme record.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Schemes tab, select the scheme to edit.
2	Click Edit or double-click the record.

50 Messaging Manager User's Guide

Step	Action	
	Result: The Edit	Scheme 'Scheme_Name' screen opens.
	Edit Scheme 'edr_	homer_saf_pme_Route'
	Name:	edr_homer_saf_pme_Route
	Default network:	Default
	Description:	Created by ConfigComponent
		Also create default domain
		Help Cancel Save

Configure this record by entering data in the fields on this screen.
 For more information about the fields on this screen, see *Scheme fields* (on page 49).

4 Click **Save** to save the updated scheme record in the configuration database.

## **Deleting schemes**

Follow these steps to delete an existing Scheme record.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Schemes tab, select the record to delete.
2	Click Delete.
	<ul> <li>Result: One of the following dialogs appears:</li> <li>The Delete Scheme 'Scheme_Name' confirmation prompt appears:</li> </ul>
	Delete Scheme 'MO_MO'
	Are you sure you want to delete this scheme?
	Delete Don't Delete
	The Scheme In Use prompt appears.
	🇁 Scheme In Use
	4 routing nodes are using this scheme - it cannot be deleted OK
3	<ul> <li>If the scheme can be deleted, click one of the following:</li> <li>Delete to delete the record from the configuration database</li> <li>Don't Delete to cancel the delete.</li> </ul>

## Networks

## Introduction

The **Networks** tab allows you to define the global (outside routing schemes) parameters to achieve the desired flexibility of the foreign subscriber gateway.

## Networks tab

Here is an example of the Networks tab.

O SU - Messaging Ma	nager Configuration				
New Edit	Delete Refre	sh Close			Help
Nodes Schemes	SMSCs Networks	ASP Parameters	ASP Groups ASPs		
Network	Description		Last Updated	By	
Default	Default Network, installe	ed by MMX	13/Jan/2010 17:15:02	MMX_ADMIN	<u>~</u>
					~
Default (ID 1) was last u	pdated by MMX_ADMIN	on 13/Jan/2010 at 11	7:15:02 using terminal MM	IX_Install	

## **Networks columns**

This table describes the content of each column.

Column	Description
Network	Name of the network.
Description	Meaningful description of this network.
Last Updated	Date and time when this network was last updated.
Ву	User ID of last update for this network.

## **Networks fields**

This table describes the function of each field.

Field	Description	
IMSI Masking	<ul> <li>Selected - Specifies that MM will replace real MSIDs (IMSIs or MINs) with internally generated temporary MSIDs.</li> </ul>	
	<ul> <li>Deselected - Default - temporary MSIDs not used, unless Accept trigger rules for a RouteInfo action are encountered.</li> </ul>	
IMSI MCC	Country code to use when building temporary IMSIs.	

Field	Description
IMSI MNC	Network code to use when building temporary IMSIs.
MSIN prefix	Fixed initial digits of the MSIN part of the IMSI when building temporary IMSIs.
MSIN length	<= 15 Number of digits to use for the remaining part of the MSIN when building temporary IMSIs.
MIN prefix	Up to 10 fixed initial digits to use when building a temporary MIN.

## **Editing networks**

Follow these steps to edit an existing network.

#### Step Action

- 1 From the table on the **Networks** tab, select the network to edit.
- 2 Perform one of the following actions:
  - Double-click the record in the table
  - Click Edit

Result: The Edit Network 'Network\_Name' screen appears.

Edit Network 'I	)efault'			
Name:	Default			
IMSI MCC:	00	IMSI MNC:	00	
🔽 IMSI mask	sing			
MSIN prefix:	0	MSIN length:	5	~
MIN prefix:	0	J		
Description:	Default Network, ir	istalled by MMX		~
		Help Ca	ancel <u>S</u>	ave

3

To generate temporary MSIDs (for IMSIs or MINs), select the IMSI masking check box.

**Note:** Leaving the IMSI masking check box deselected makes all but the **Description** field unused for all except RouteInfo actions.

Masking takes place regardless, using the values from this configuration screen when Accept trigger rules for a RouteInfo action are encountered.

- 4 When generating temporary MSIDs for IMSIs, enter the country code to use in the **IMSI** MCC field.
- 5 When generating temporary MSIDs for IMSIs, enter the network code to use in the **IMSI MNC** field.
- 6 When generating temporary MSIDs for IMSIs, enter the fixed initial digits part of the MSIN

Step	Action
	in the MSIN prefix field.
7	When generating temporary MSIDs for IMSIs, enter the number of remaining digits to use (up to 15) for the MSIN in the <b>MSIN length</b> field.
8	When generating temporary MSIDs for MINs, enter the fixed initial digits to use (up to 10) in the <b>MIN prefix</b> field.
	<b>Note:</b> A MIN is exactly 10 digits in length, hence the number of digits to use for the remaining part of a temporary MIN is determined by the length of the MIN prefix.
9	Enter the network description in the <b>Description</b> field.
10	Click <b>Save</b> to save the updated network record in the configuration database.

## SMSCs

## Introduction

The **SMSCs** tab allows you to map a message center to a Service Center Address (SCA). If required, the SCA may be entered as a Global Title.

You can associate a SMSC with a path if it is used to receive messages from ASPs or handsets, but not if it is used to receive messages from a SMSC.

An SMSC can be associated with a path, meaning that a message received on that path will also be associated with that SMSC. Also, the SMSC assigned to a message plays a part in routing of the message if the message is a 'Submit' type message.

## SMSCs tab

Here is an example of the SMSCs tab.

O SU - Messaging Manag	ger Configuration		
New Edit	Delete Refresh Close		Help
Nodes Schemes St	MSCs Networks ASP Paramet	ers ASP Groups ASPs	
SMSC	Service Centre Address	Last Updated	Ву
Default	0	13/Jan/2010 17:15:00	MMX_ADMIN
Defended D. O. mark in theme day		0 -1 /7 /5 00	M Juncha II
Detault (ID 1) was last updat	ted by MMX_ADMIN on 13/Jan/2010	o at 17:10:00 using terminal MM.	x_install

## **SMSCs** fields

Field	Description	
SMSC name	The name of the SMSC.	
	This field is required.	
Service Centre The Service Center Address for the SMSC.		
Address	This field is required.	

This table describes the function of each field.

## Adding SMSCs

Follow these steps to add an SMSC to the database.

Step	Action
1	From the <b>SMSCs</b> tab screen, click <b>New</b> . <b>Result</b> : The New SMSC screen appears.
	New SMSC
	SMSC name:
	Help Cancel Save
2	In the SMSC name field, enter name of the new SMSC.
	For more information about the fields on this screen, see SMSCs fields

For more information about the fields on this screen, see *SMSCs fields* (on page 55).

Result: The Save button becomes available.

- 3 In the **Service centre address** field, enter the service center address for the SMSC.
- 4 Click **Save** to save the new SMSC in the configuration database.

**Note:** When MM is installed, a default SMSC is created. The initial SCA value of this default SMSC is set to 0. This should be change to a valid value when the initial configuration of MM is done.

## **Editing SMSCs**

Follow these steps to edit an existing SMSC.

Step	Action
1	From the table on the SMSCs tab, select the record you want to edit.
2	<ul> <li>Perform one of the following actions:</li> <li>Double-click the record</li> <li>Click Edit</li> </ul>
	Result: The Edit SMSC screen appears.



4 Click Save.

#### **Deleting SMSCs**

Follow these steps to delete an existing SMSC record.

Step	Action
1 From the table on the <b>SMSCs</b> tab, select the record to delete.	
	Note: You cannot delete the default SMSC.
2	Click <b>Delete</b> .
	Result: The Delete SMSC confirmation prompt opens.
3	To delete the SMSC record from the configuration database, click <b>Delete</b> .

## **ASP** Parameters

#### Introduction

The **ASP Parameters** tab allows you to configure the elements which appear on the ASP screen, which is used by ACS customers to manage their ASP account.

The GUI will refer to the list of constants from this group whenever it needs to present the configurable ASP group, template or account parameters (that is, in the New or Edit dialog box for each type of object).

For more information about ASP accounts and groups, see ASP Groups and Parameters (on page 24).

## ASP Parameters tab

Here is an example of the ASP Parameter	s tab.
---	--------

Nodes Schemes SMSCs	Networks	ASP Paramet	ers AS	P Groups	ASPs		
Label	Туре	Tag	Widget	Level	Last Updated	Ву	
0 0 Identification	Title				13/May/2010 09:55:12	MMX_ADMIN	
1 0 Routing	Title				13/May/2010 09:55:12	MMX_ADMIN	
1 1 ASP short codes	Strings	6	Textbox	GTA	13/May/2010 09:55:12	MMX_ADMIN	
2 4 Max MM4 Connections	Integer	4	Textbox	GTA	13/May/2010 09:55:12	MMX_ADMIN	
2 1 Max EMI Connections	Integer	1	Textbox	GTA	13/May/2010 09:55:12	MMX_ADMIN	
2 3 Max CIMD Connections	Integer	3	Textbox	GTA	13/May/2010 09:55:12	MMX_ADMIN	
2 0 Protocol Limits	Title				13/May/2010 09:55:12	MMX_ADMIN	
2 5 Max MM7 Connections	Integer	5	Textbox	GTA	13/May/2010 09:55:12	MMX_ADMIN	
2 2 Max SMPP Connections	Integer	2	Textbox	GTA	13/May/2010 09:55:12	MMX_ADMIN	

## **ASP** parameters fields

This table describes the function of each field.

Field	Description	
Dialog label	Label as presented in the Create and the Edit ASP accounts screens.	
	Required.	
Parameter type	Data type (integer, boolean or string) to be used when storing values for this parameter in the ACS Customer profile block.	
	Title defines a page title of the configuration wizard. This enables you to group related parameters.	
	Required.	
Page number	The panel on the Create and the Edit ASP account screen that this parameter will appear on. Required.	
GUI widget	Presentation widget to use on the Create and the Edit ASP account screens for this ASP parameter.	
	Required (unless Parameter type is set to title).	
Row on page	Where on the Create and the Edit ASP account screen this parameter should appear. (The page is set by the Page number field).	
Profile tag	The profile field to store the value of this ASP parameter to, if the value is set at the ASP account level (the value is not stored in the profile if it is set by a default, or is a null value).	
	This drop down list is populated by the profile fields associated with the ACS Customer profile block on the ACS Configuration screen.	
	For more information about profiles, see ACS User's Guide.	

Field	Description			
Special meaning	have a specific purpose in MM.			
	ASP short code	The ASP parameter will store ASP short codes which can be used in IP connections for this ASP account.		
		Short codes are entered as a space or newline separated list.		
	Max <i>protocol</i> connections	This ASP parameter will store the maximum number of connections of this protocol allowed for an ASP.		
	Optional.			
Maximum length	Max number of characters allowed for the value of this ASP parameter. For both integer and string this will constrain the length of the associated text box (if any).			
	Note: Only applies to parameters where Parameter type is set to integer or string.			
Default value	Value the ASP parameter will default to. Optional.			
	Note: A default value may be also set at the ASP Group level.			
Editable level	<ul> <li>el These check boxes define which levels the widget can be edited at:</li> <li>ASP group</li> <li>ASP template</li> <li>ASP account</li> <li>For more information about how these levels work to set defaults, see ASP groups and parameter defaults (on page 25).</li> </ul>			
A value is mandatory	If this checkbox is ticked, the ASP account will not be saved unless this ASP parameter has one of:			
	<ul><li>Been given a specific value</li><li>Set to the ASP Group default (if one is available)</li></ul>			
Allowable values		s ASP parameter can have.		
	allowable value. If	as a range, or a list. A variable can be defined with a single this field is empty, then all values for the given data type will rings, you can specify a regex value to be used for validation.		

Note: To create a list with a restricted set of options, you must:

- make the widget type = list, and
- code the allowable values as a comma separated list in Allowable values (for example, a list with names would be entered as: 1:One, 2:Two, 3:Three, 4:Four

#### Title

Titles are used to provide the labels for the ASP configuration screens (Create and Edit ASP Groups, Create and Edit ASP Template and Create and Edit ASP Accounts).

Notes:

- Only one title can be defined for each page.
- The title will be displayed at the top of the page only, regardless of any value in the Row field.

## Adding ASP parameters

Follow these steps to add a new ASP parameter to the configuration database.

#### Step Action

1

2

From the ASP Parameters tab, click New ...

**Result:** The New ASP Parameter screen opens.

This screen enables you to create new ASP parameters which will then be available for use in the ASP account screens.

New ASP Paramete	r			E
Please enter a la	ibel for this ASP param	oeter		
Dialog label:			Parameter type:	<b>~</b>
Page number:			GUI widget:	~
Row on page:			Profile tag:	~
Special meaning:		*		
Maximum length:			Default value:	
Editable levels:	🗌 Group 📃 Templat	e 🗌 Account		A value is mandatory
Allowable values:				
				Help Cancel Save

Enter data in the fields to configure this record.

**Note:** If you do not set a value for maximum length, it will default to 0. This will mean this ASP parameter cannot have a value entered for it in the Create and the Edit ASP account screens.

For more information about:

- The fields in this screen, see ASP parameters fields (on page 57)
- ASP accounts, see ASP Groups and Parameters (on page 24)
- 3 Click **Save** to save the new ASP parameter in the configuration database.

## **Editing ASP parameters**

Follow these steps to edit an existing ASP parameter.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the ASP Parameters tab, select the parameter to edit.
2	Click Edit
	Result: The Edit ASP Parameters 'asp_Parameter_Name' screen opens.
	This screen enables you to edit existing ASP parameters used in the ASP account screens. For more information about ASP accounts, see <i>ASP Groups and Parameters</i> (on page 24).

Step	Action							
		Edit ASP Paramete	r 'MAX SM	PP Connecti	ons'			
						1		
		Dialog label:	MAX SMPP C	Connections		Parameter type:	Integers	*
		Page number:	2			GUI widget:	List	*
		Row on page:	5			Profile tag:	Divert Address Busy (17)	*
		Special meaning:	Max SMPP C	Connections	*	]		
		Maximum length:	0			Default value:		
		Editable levels:	🔽 Group	🔽 Template	🗹 Account		A value is mandatory	
		Allowable values:						
							Help Cancel	<u>S</u> ave

3 Edit the fields with the changes to make.

**Note:** If you do not set a value for maximum length, it will default to 0. This will mean this ASP parameter cannot have a value entered for it in the Create and the Edit ASP account screens.

For more information about the fields in this screen, see *ASP parameters fields* (on page 57).

4 Click **Save** to save the updated scheme record in the configuration database.

## **Deleting ASP Parameters**

Follow these steps to delete an existing ASP parameter record.

**Warning:** If you delete an ASP parameter, it will delete all the values for that parameter in all the ASP accounts and ASP groups.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the ASP Parameters tab, select the record to delete.
2	Click Delete
	Result: The Delete ASP Parameter confirmation prompt appears.
	This prompt enables you to delete an existing ASP parameter. For more information about ASP parameters, see ASP Groups and Parameters (on page 24).
3	Click one of:
	<ul> <li>Delete to delete the ASP Parameter from the configuration database</li> </ul>
	Don't Delete to cancel the delete

## **ASP Groups**

## Introduction

The ASP Groups tab allows you to define groups of ASP accounts.

ASP Groups should be configured before ASPs are configured.

For more information about ASP accounts and groups, see ASP Groups and Parameters (on page 24).

## ASP Groups tab

Here is an example of the ASP Groups tab.

O SU - Messaging Manager Configura	tion	
New Edit Delete	Refresh Close	Help
Nodes Schemes SMSCs Netwo	orks ASP Parameters ASP Groups	ASPs
Name	Last Updated	Ву
ASP Group 1	06/Oct/2010 16:10:17	SU 🔼
ASP Group 2	06/Oct/2010 16:11:04	SU
ASP Group 2(ID 2) was last updated by SU	on 06/Oct/2010 at 16:11:04 using termina	1 192.168.25.81

## ASP groups fields

This table describes the function of each field.

Field	Description
Name	Customer allocated name for customer group.
Other fields	The other fields in this screen are configured in the <b>ASP Parameters</b> tab. The panels in this screen are configured by the Title objects in the <b>ASP Parameters</b> tab.
	For more information about configuring the fields which appear on this screen, see <i>ASP Parameters</i> (on page 56).

## Adding ASP groups

Follow these steps to add a new ASP group.

Step	Action
1	From the ASP Groups tab, click New

Step	Action							
	Result: The New ASP Group screen opens.							
	This screen enables you to add new ASP groups. For more information about address rules, see ASP Groups and Parameters (on page 24).							
	New ASP Group - Page 1 of 3 - Introduction							
	Topics         Introduction         ASP Short Code         Protocol Limits							
	Name:							
	Help Cancel Go Back Continue Save							

2 Enter data in the fields to configure this record.

#### Notes:

The values in this screen will set the defaults for the ASP accounts which use this ASP group. Where no default should be set in the ASP accounts, do not enter a value here.

- To save an ASP group, you must have a value in the Name field.
- Other than the Name field, all the fields in this screen are configured on the ASP . Parameters screen. For more information about these fields, refer to your administrator.
- 3 Click Save to save the new ASP group in the configuration database.

## **Editing ASP groups**

Follow these steps to edit an existing ASP group.

Action
In the table on the ASP Groups tab, select the group to edit.
Click Edit
Result: The Edit ASP Groups 'asp_Parameter_Name' screen opens.
This screen enables you to edit existing ASP groups. For more information about ASP groups, see <i>ASP Groups and Parameters</i> (on page 24).

Step	Action		
🕌 Edit -	ASP group 'ASP Group' - Page	1 of 3 - Introduction	X
V Ir	Topics Itroduction SP Short Code rotocol Limits		
		Name: ASP Group	
		Help Cancel Go Back Continue Save	]

3 Edit the fields with the changes to make.

#### Notes:

- Other than the **Name** field, all the fields in this screen are configured on the ASP Parameters screen. For more information about these fields, refer to your administrator.
- The values in this screen will set the defaults for the ASP accounts which use this ASP group. Where no default should be set in the ASP accounts, do not enter a value here.
- 4 Click **Save** to save the updated Scheme record in the configuration database.

## **Deleting ASP groups**

Follow these steps to delete an existing ASP group record.

**Warning:** Do not delete an ASP group which is being used by one or more ASP accounts. You will not be able to edit those ASP accounts after the ASP Group has been deleted.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the ASP Groups tab, select the group to delete.
2	Click Delete
	Result: The Delete ASP Group confirmation prompt appears.
	This prompt enables you to delete an existing ASP group. For more information about ASP groups, see ASP Groups and Parameters (on page 24).
3	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the ASP group from the configuration database.

## ASPs

## Introduction

The **ASPs** tab allows you to define ASP accounts and provides a convenient way to rapidly allocate ASP paths and connections.

## ASPs tab

Here is an example of the ASPs tab.

🖸 SU - Me	ssaging Man	ager Configuratio	1				
New	Edit	Delete Re	fresh Close				Help
Nodes	Schemes	SMSCs Networks	ASP Parameters A	SP Groups	ASPs		
Name		Туре	Last Up	pdated		By	
							· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Protocol	Scheme	Path	Connection		Last Update	d	By
							^
							~
				Ad	d E	dit	Remove

## **ASPs fields**

This table describes the function of each field.

Field	Description
Name	The unique name of this ASP account or template.
Туре	Defines whether this record is an ASP template or an ASP account.
Based on template	The template to base this ASP account on.
	Notes:
	• This field is only available on the New ASP screen. Once an ASP account or template has been created its association with the template is lost.
	• You can link the ASP account to a group other than the group specified in the template selected in this field.
Allocate to ASP group	The ASP group this ASP account belongs to. This field is populated by the records on the <i>ASP Groups</i> (on page 61) tab. This field is required.

**Note:** This screen will have other configuration on later panels. This configuration is defined in the *ASP Parameters* (on page 56) tab. The specific configuration which appears here will be the configuration which is defined for the ASP group specified in the **Allocate to ASP group** field.

### Adding ASP accounts or templates

Follow these steps to add a new ASP account or ASP account template.

#### Step Action

1

From the ASP tab screen, click New ...

Result: The New ASP screen opens.

This screen enables you to add new ASP accounts and account templates. For more information about ASPs, see *ASP Groups and Parameters* (on page 24).

🕌 New ASP - Page 1 of 3 - Introd	luction	×
Topics		
Introduction	<u>^</u>	Please enter a name for this ASP
ASP Short Code		
Protocol Limits		
		Name:
		Type: <ul> <li>Account</li> <li>Template</li> </ul>
		Type: 💿 Account 🔿 Template
		Based on template:
		Allocate to ASP group:
	~ <	<
	He	elp Cancel Go Back Continue Save

2

Enter data in the fields to configure this record.

#### Notes:

- ASP account templates provide a set of configuration which can be used to pre-populate configuration in a new ASP account. Once the ASP account is saved, its relationship with the template is lost.
- Other than the Name, Type, Based on template and Allocate to ASP group fields, all the fields in this screen are configured on the ASP Parameters tab.
- Defaults are configured on the ASP Parameters tab, and on the ASP Groups tab, in the ASP Group selected in the Allocate to ASP group drop down list. For more information about these fields, refer to your Administrator.
- If a field cannot have data entered in it (even when the default check box is deselected), it may have a maximum field length of 0. Check the ASP Parameters record for this field (for more information about setting the Maximum field length, see ASP parameters fields (on page 57).

3 Click **Save** to save the new ASP account or template.

# Editing ASP accounts and templates

Follow these steps to edit an existing ASP account or ASP account template.

Step	Action					
1	In the table on the ASPs tab, select the record to edit.					
2	Click Edit					
	<ul> <li>Results:</li> <li>If the record was an ASP account, the Edit ASP account 'asp_Account_Name' screen opens.</li> <li>If the record was an ASP template, the Edit ASP template 'asp_Template_Name' screen opens.</li> </ul>					
	Edit ASP Template 'Alternate Connection Maxes' - Page 1 of 3 - Introduction					
	Topics         ✓ Introduction         ✓ ASP Short Code         Protocol Limits         Name:       rnate Connection Maxes         Type:       Account () Template         Allocate to ASP group:       ASP Group1 ♥					
	Help Cancel Go Back Continue Save					

These screens enable you to edit existing ASP accounts and ASP account templates. For more information about ASP accounts and templates, see *ASP Groups and Parameters* (on page 24).

Step Action				
🕌 Edit ASP Account 'Telco Services'	Pag	e 1 of 3 - Introduction		
Topics				
✓ ASP Short Code				
Protocol Limits				
		Name:	Telco Services	
		Туре:	Account	
		Allocate to ASP group:	ASP Group 🔽	
	~	<		>
		Help Cancel	Go Back Continue	Save

Edit the fields with the changes to make.

#### Notes:

3

- Editing ASP account templates will not affect the ASP accounts which were based on that template.
- Other than the Name and Allocate to ASP group fields, all the fields in this screen are configured on the ASP Parameters tab.
- Defaults are configured on the ASP Parameters tab, and on the ASP Groups tab, in the ASP Group selected in the Allocate to ASP group drop down list.
- For more information about these fields, refer to your Administrator.
- If a field cannot have data entered in it (even when the default check box is deselected), it may have a maximum field length of 0. Check the ASP Parameters record for this field (for more information about setting the Maximum field length, see ASP parameters fields (on page 57).
- 4 Click **Save** to save the updated ASP account or template in the configuration database.

# **Deleting ASP accounts and templates**

Follow these steps to delete an existing ASP account or ASP account template.

**Note:** Deleting ASP account templates will not affect the ASP accounts which were based on that template.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the ASPs tab, select the record to delete.
2	Click Delete
	Result: The Delete ASP confirmation prompt appears.
	This prompt enables you to delete an existing ASP account or ASP account template. For more information about ASP groups, see ASP Groups and Parameters (on page 24).
3	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the ASP account or template from the configuration database.

# **IP** connections

The bottom panel on the **ASPs** tab contains a list of IP connections currently associated with the ASP account selected in the top panel. It contains all paths and connections owned by the adapter instances in all routing schemes that have been associated with that ASP account.

Note: This panel is only displayed when an ASP Account is selected in the top panel.

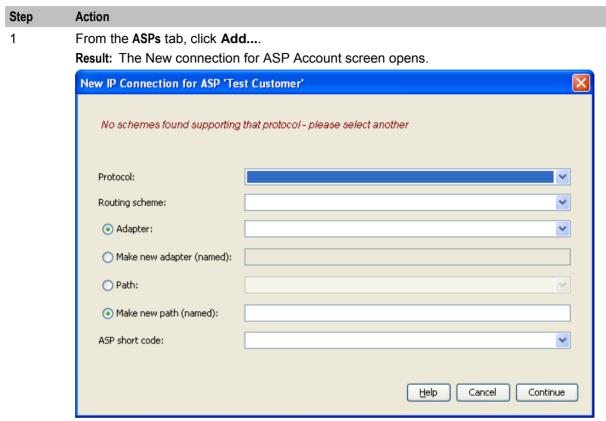
#### IP connection fields - ASPs tab

This table describes the function of each field.

Field	Description	
Protocol	Protocol this IP connection will use.	
	Desired protocol (restricted to this ASP's supported protocols).	
Routing scheme	The routing scheme this IP connection will be part of.	
	<b>Note:</b> This field is populated by the <i>Schemes</i> (on page 45) tab, with schemes which can support the protocol selected in the protocol field.	
Adapter	The adapter this IP connection should use.	
	<b>Note:</b> This field is populated by the <i>Adapters</i> (on page 75) option in the Schemes detail.	
Make new	Create a new adapter with the name entered in this field. Optional.	
adapter (named)	This adapter will be added to the scheme specified in the Routing scheme field.	
Path	Paths in the selected scheme supporting that protocol and already associated with the ASP. Alternatively a text box can be completed, to name the new path that should be created to hold the new connection. In this case the validation, and the database updates, are performed in a single unit of work so the dialog will either display an error message objecting to the path or connection fields, or it will create the path and connection together in one transaction. <ul> <li>Login username</li> <li>Login password</li> <li>Routing interface to select for local listen</li> <li>Routing interface to select for local source</li> <li>Failover check box</li> </ul>	
Make new path (named)	Create a new path with the name entered in this field. Optional. This path will be added to the scheme specified in the Routing scheme field.	
ASP short code	ASP short code for the service which will use this connection. Optional.	
Failover check	If another connection in the path disconnects, then MM will attempt to open paths with this check box selected.	
	Can be toggled on the tab for immediate database update.	
Enabled check box	Enable and disable connections as can be done in the Connections list inside a routing scheme.	
	Can be toggled on the tab for immediate database update.	

# Adding IP connections in ASPs

Follow these steps to add a new IP connection to the ASP account selected in the top panel.



This screen enables you to create and edit connections belonging to an ASP without leaving the **ASPs** tab. For more information about connections, see *Paths and Connections* (on page 15).

2 Enter data in the fields to configure this record.

This screen creates a connection in the selected routing scheme, and will create a new path if necessary. The fields in this screen generally must be completed in a top-down order.

For specific information about the details required for this protocol, see *Path Connections* (on page 85).

3 Click Save.

**Result:** The details are saved, and the New '*protocol*' connection screen opens. For more information about filling out this screen, see *Path Connections* (on page 85).

# **Editing IP connections in ASPs**

Follow these steps to edit an existing IP connection from the ASPs tab.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the ASPs tab, select the record to edit.
2	Click Edit
	The Edit <i>protocol</i> Connection 'Connection_Name' dialog for the selected IP connection opens. The edit connection dialog includes all the connection configuration fields relevant

### Step Action

to the type of protocol. These fields are not visible when you open the New IP Connection for ASP dialog.

**Note:** You can also edit connections from the **Paths** tab by selecting and opening the associated scheme on the **Schemes** tab.

3 Update the fields as required. See:

- *IP Connections* (on page 87) for more information about configuring IP connections and for information about the connection fields for the different connection protocols
- *Paths and Connections* (on page 15) for general information about paths and connections
- 4 Click **Save** to save the updated IP connection in the configuration database.

#### **Example Edit SMPP Connection dialog**

Here is an example edit connection dialog for the SMPP protocol. In this example, the name of the connection is XMSP12.

Edit SMPP Connection '>	XMSPI2'			×
Name:	XMSPI2			
Weighting:	10			
📝 Enabled 📄 Pr	reopen 👿 RX 👿 TX 📄 Shadowed	I	IP address / host name	Port
Local username:	m2	Local listen:		4321
Local password:		Local source:	-	0
Remote username:	r2	Remote listen:	cwm.me.uk	4321
Remote password:		Remote source:		
Connections allowed:	1			
SMPP Options				
s	SMPP version: 3.4 - Max	. concurrent transac	tions: 1024	
		going timeout:	10	
s	System ID: eSG MMX Idle	timeout:	0	
s	System type: MMX Hea	artbeat interval:	0	
		Augment IDs	eSG Extensions	
			Help Cancel	Save

# **Deleting IP connection in ASPs**

Follow these steps to delete an existing IP connection from an ASP account.

Step	Action			
1	In the table on the ASPs tab, select the record to delete.			
2	Click <b>Delete</b> .			
	Result: The Delete IP connection confirmation prompt appears.			
	This prompt enables you to delete an IP connection associated with the ASP selected in the top panel. For more information about connections, see <i>Paths and Connections</i> (on page 15).			
	<b>Note:</b> This prompt is the same as the delete connection screens which are accessible from the Paths & Connections option in the <b>Schemes</b> tab.			
3	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the IP connection from the configuration database.			

# **Messaging Manager Schemes**

# Overview

#### Introduction

This chapter explains the functionality of the Oracle Communications Convergent Charging Controller Messaging Manager Schemes screen. The Schemes screen is accessed through the Messaging Manager Configuration screen and is the main screen for configuring the paths, addressing, screening, triggering, routing and throttling of Messaging Manager schemes.

#### In this chapter

This chapter contains the following topics.

Messaging Manager Scheme Screen	73
Adapters	
Interfaces	
Paths	80
Path Connections	
IP Connections	
SS7 Connections	
Screening	
Global Title Screening Rules	105
SCA Consistency Rules	
Screening Rules	
RLV Prefix Rules	
Addressing	114
Throttling	119
Triggering	
Routing	128

# **Messaging Manager Scheme Screen**

### Accessing the Messaging Manager Scheme screen

You access the Messaging ManagerScheme screen through the **Schemes** tab of the Messaging Manager Configuration screen. For details, see *Opening schemes* (on page 47).

#### Scheme tabs

The Scheme screen allows you to configure the details of a scheme.

This table describes the tabs on the screen.

Tab	Description	See
Adapters	•	<i>Adapters</i> (on page 75)
Interfaces	Defines the interfaces which are available to the scheme.	Interfaces (on page

Tab	Description	See
		78)
Paths	Defines the paths available to the scheme.	Paths (on page 80)
Screening	Defines the anti-spam rules for the scheme.	<i>Screening</i> (on page 98)
Addressing	Defines the addressing rules for the scheme.	<i>Addressing</i> (see " <i>Address Domains</i> " on page 27, on page 114)
Throttling	Reports summary of all the domain throttling values.	<i>Throttling</i> (on page 119)
Triggering	Defines the triggering rules for the scheme.	<i>Triggering</i> (on page 122)
Routing	Defines the routing rules for the scheme.	<i>Routing</i> (on page 128)

# Adjusting panel displays

On the **Screening** and **Paths** tabs you can expand or collapse the panels on the screen using the arrows on the horizontal/ vertical bar between the panels.

SU - Messaging Manager Scheme 'TS3'					
New Edit	Delete	Refresh	Close		
Adapters Interfaces	Paths	Screening	Addressing	Throttling	
Ada Path	E/P	т [ ] ]	onnection		
Internal INTERNAL_DR	Inte	YES			
Vince T Vince Test Path	SME	YES			
Vince T Vince Test 2	SME	YES			

The following describes how to adjust the display:

• To Display only the right hand panel: Click the arrow which points left.

**Result:** Only the right hand panel is displayed.

C	SU - Messaging Manager Scheme 'TS3'								
C	New	Edit	Delete	Refresh	Close				Help
5	Adapters	Interfaces	Paths	Screening	Addressing	Throttling	Triggering	Routing	1
	Connection				Weight		Percent	%	
۲									-

- To Display both panels when only the right hand panel is displayed Click the arrow which points right.
- To Display only the left hand panel Click the arrow which points right.

🖸 SU - Messaging Manager Scheme 'TS3'					
New Edit	Delete	Refresh Close	]		Help
Adapters Inte	rfaces Paths	Screening Addressing	Throttling Trigg	ering Routing	
Adapter	Path		E/P	Trusted	
Internal	INTERNAL_D	R	Internal	YES	- <b>^</b>
Vince Test	Vince Test Pa	ath	SME	YES	
Vince Test 2	Vince Test 2		SME	YES	

**Result:** Only the left hand panel is displayed.

• To Display both panels when only the right hand panel is displayed Click the arrow which points left.

# Adapters

# Introduction

The **Adapters** tab enables you to add, change and delete adapter records. Adapters are used by Messaging Manager to communicate to the network using different protocols.

Entries in the **eserv.config** file identify which adapters will be loaded by Messaging Manager at startup. The link between **eserv.config** and the adapter configuration values is made on this tab.

It is important to note that there may be many adapters configured in the system that use the same protocol, but each adapter may only use a single protocol.

**Note:** Messaging Manager provides a special adapter, which has a protocol of INTERNAL, for communications between the Send Short Message feature node and Messaging Manager. This is the only function of the INTERNAL adapter.

# Adapters tab

Here is an example of the Adapters tab.

	aging Manager S								
New	Edit Dele	te	Refresh	Close					Help
Adapters	Interfaces Pa	aths S	Screening	Addressing	Throttling	Triggering	Routing		
Adapter		Protoc	ol		Last Updat	ed		Ву	
DMA_Adaptor		IS41_C	DMA		06/Oct/2010	15:40:59		50	
IP Adaptor		SIP			06/Oct/2010	15:41:15	1	50	
MPP Plugin		SMPP			15/Jul/2010	11:08:52		MMX_ADMIN	

# Adapters fields

This table describes the function of each field.

Field	Description
Adapter	The name of the adapter. The name must exactly match the adapter name specified in the adapterName parameter in the eserv.config configuration file.
	<b>Note:</b> The SLEE will fail to successfully start, or restart, if the adapters you configure in the Messaging Manager UI do not have a corresponding adapter section defined in the <b>eserv.config</b> file. For more information about configuring adapters in <b>eserv.config</b> , see <i>Messaging Manager Technical Guide</i> .
Protocol	List of available protocols that an adapter can use.

# Adding adapters

Follow these steps to add a new adapter to the configuration database.

Step	Action
1	From the Adapters tab, click New.
	The New Adapter dialog displays.

New Adapter	
Name:	
Protocol:	EMI INTERNAL IS41_CDMA IS41_TDMA MAP SIP SMPP
	Help Cancel Save

2 Enter the name of this adapter in the Name field. The name must exactly match the adapter name specified in the adapterName parameter in the eserv.config configuration file.

For more information, see Adapters fields (on page 76).

- 3 Select the protocol that this adapter will use from the **Protocol** list.
- 4 Click **Save** to save the new adapter record in the configuration database. The name of the new adapter displays in the **Adapter** field on the **Adapter** tab.

# Editing adapters

Follow these steps to edit an existing Adapter record; for example, to update the adapter name to match what is in the **eserv.config** file.

Step	Action
1	From the table on the Adapters tab, select the record to edit. Click Edit or double-click the record.
	The Edit Adapter 'Adapter_Name' dialog displays.

Edit Adapter	MAP Plugin'
Name:	MAP Plugin
Protocol:	EMI
	INTERNAL IS41_CDMA
	IS41_TDMA
	MAP SIP
	SMPP
	Help Cancel Save

2 Update the name of the adapter in the Name field to match the <code>adapterName</code> parameter in the eserv.config configuration file .

For more information about the fields on this screen, see Adapters fields (on page 76).

3 Click Save.

#### **Deleting adapters**

Follow these steps to delete an existing adapter record.

Step	Action
1	From the Adapters tab, click Delete.
	The Delete Adapter adapter_name dialog displays.
2	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.

# Interfaces

#### Introduction

The Interfaces tab enables you to configure Interface records.

Interfaces are used in IP connections and nodes. The IP addresses associated with interfaces are defined in nodes. An interface record in a scheme can have a different IP address in each node the scheme is assigned to.

# Interfaces panel

Here is an example of the Interfaces tab.

New Edit	Delete Refresh Close		Help
Adapters Interfaces	Paths Screening Addressing	Throttling Triggering Routing	
Name	Last Updated	Ву	
JIC_A	22/Jul/2010 12:58:44	SU	/
li⊂_β	22/Jul/2010 12:58:51	SU	
NC_C	22/Jul/2010 12:58:57	SU	
NIC_D	22/Jul/2010 12:59:04	SU	

### **Interfaces fields**

This table describes the function of the field.

Field	Description
Name	The name of this interface.

### **Adding interfaces**

Follow these steps to add a new interface to a routing scheme.

For more information about interfaces, see Interfaces and nodes (on page 10).

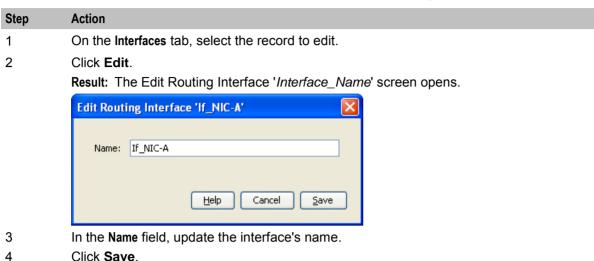
Step	Action
1	On the <b>Interfaces</b> tab, click <b>New</b> . <b>Result:</b> The New Routing Interface screen opens.
	New Routing Interface
	Name:
	Help Cancel Save
2	In the <b>Name</b> field, enter the name of this interface.

3 Click **Save** to save the new Interface record in the configuration database.

### **Editing interfaces**

Follow these steps to edit an existing interface name.

For more information about interfaces, see Interfaces and nodes (on page 10).



Deleting interfaces

Follow these steps to delete an existing interface record.

Step	Action
1	On the Interfaces tab, select the record to delete.
2	Click Delete
	Result: The Delete Routing Interface confirmation prompt opens.
3	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.

# Paths

### Introduction

The **Paths** tab enables you to add, update and remove the user-defined paths for this scheme. All paths into and out of Messaging Manager need to be specified in this tab.

A path is a common label applied to a collection of similar connections. Connections are grouped as follows:

- Messages received from connections within the same path will be treated equally. Routing, classification, relay rules, all downstream processing will only examine the path, and will not examine the individual connection details.
- Outbound delivery will select a path, and it is assumed that all connections within that path are functionally equal. Weighting parameters and outbound connection parameters may determine that one connection is preferred over another, but any single message delivered on that path may select any valid connection at any time.

All connections in a path must:

• Connect to the same endpoint type (SMC or SME)

 Use the same protocol (one of SMPP, EMI, MAP, IS41\_CDMA, or IS41\_TDMA) through the same adapter

#### Paths tab

Here is an example of the **Paths** tab.

Adapters	Interfaces Paths	Screening	Addre	essin	ng Throttling Triggering Routing	
Adapter	Path	E/P	Trusted		Connection Weight Percent %	1
CDMA_Ada	IS41_CDMA_SME_CDMA	SME	YES	~	IS41_CDMA_SME_CDMA_Adaptor_AUTO 0	0.
CDMA_Ada	IS41_CDMA_MC_CDMA_A	MC	YES			
nternal	INTERNAL_DR	Internal	YES			
IP Adaptor	SIP_MC_SIP Adaptor_AUTO	MC	YES	1		
MPP Plugin	ASP SMPP 447222	SME	YES			
MPP Plugin	ASP SMPP 447123	SME	YES			
MPP Plugin	ASP SMPP 447321	SME	YES			
				*		

**Note:** The columns on this screen can be expanded or collapsed in the same way as for the **Screening** tab. For more information about how to use this functionality, see *Adjusting panel displays* (on page 74).

### Paths tab columns

These tables describe the content of each column. The information is sorted by adapter and then path.

Column	Description		
Adapter	The adapter this path is using.		
Path	The path name.		
	<b>Note:</b> This name must be able to be matched at least once against the entries in the path prefix list.		
E/P Displays the endpoint type of each path.			
Trusted	Indicator of path spam trustworthiness.		

These column contents are for the selected adapter and path combination.

Column	Description		
Connection Lists all the connections for the selected path.			
Weight	Lists all the weightings for the selected path.		
Percent %	Lists all the calculated weighting percentages for the selected path.		

### Paths tab buttons

This table describes the function of each button, specific to the Paths tab, at the bottom of the tab.

#### Note: Buttons are active depending on the selection context.

Button	Description
Select <u>A</u> ll	Selects all the paths for this scheme.
Select <u>N</u> one	De-selects any selected paths for this scheme. This button is available whenever a path is selected.
Copy	Copies the data from the currently selected record ready for pasting into another record.
Paste	This pastes a previously copied set of data into the current record.
Adjust <u>W</u> eights	Opens the Adjust Connection Weights on Path <i>Path_Name</i> screen.
Add Connection	Opens a new screen with blank connection record fields.
<u>E</u> dit	Opens the Edit Connection screen for the selected connection.
Remove	Deletes the selected connection record. This button is available on selecting a rule.

#### Other path buttons

This table describes the function of other buttons found on Paths tab sub panels.

Note: Buttons are active depending on the selection context.

Button	Description		
Remove Don't Remove	After selecting a path connection and clicking <b>Remove</b> , if you are sure you want to delete the selected record, click <b>Remove</b> to proceed. If you do not want to delete the record, click <b>Don't Remove</b> .		
Equalise Weights	Used to adjust the weighting of all connections for the selected path to be equal.		

#### Path screen fields

This table describes the function of each field in the New Path and Edit Path screens.

Field	Description			
Name	Name for this path. This field is required.			
Adapter The adapter this path will use. The field is required.				
Endpoint type	<ul><li>The destination type. There are two options:</li><li>MC (Message Centre - SMSC)</li></ul>			
	SME (Short Message Entity - ASP or MSC).			
	This field is required.			
ASP account The ASP account that is associated with this path.				
	This list is populated by the <i>ASPs</i> (on page 64) tab. Optional.			
	This field is not available on paths that use an SS7 or internal adapter.			
ASP short code	If you select a short code, MM will set up a deliver routing rule to this path, where short code is the destination address			

Field	Description						
	of the rule.						
	The available short codes are the short codes configured for the ASP account selected in the ASP account field.						
	This field is not available on paths that use an SS7 or internal adapter.						
	Optional.						
Default routing path	The path to use when no matching routing rule can be found when using the route action. This field is optional.						
	<b>Warning:</b> If this path is needed and has not been provided here, the message is dropped.						
Message centre	SMSC associated with this path. See <i>SMSCs</i> (on page 54) for an explanation of the association.						
	Notes:						
	• This field is disabled (grayed out) if you select MC for the endpoint type.						
	• If you have selected SME for the endpoint type, this field is required.						
Statistics category	The text entered in this field will be added to the DETAIL column of the SMF_STATISTICS database table.						
	This field is optional. For more information, see <i>MM Technical Guide</i> .						
	<b>Note:</b> For delivery reports this value will automatically be <b>INTERNAL_DR</b> .						
Max messages/sec	Sets the maximum number of messages per second allowed through the path for EMI and SMPP protocols. This field is optional.						
This is a trusted path	Whether or not messages received on this path will go through the screening rules. Trusted paths do not have screening applied to them.						
Enabled	This path is available for traffic.						
	For incoming paths, a disabled path will not be available to be assigned to messages.						
	For outbound paths, a disabled path will not be used to carry traffic.						
	Notes:						
	• If you disable all the paths for a routing rule, the routing rule will stop delivering traffic.						
	• Changing the enabled status of a path does not change the enabled status of the path's connections.						

# Adding paths

Follow these steps to add a new path to an adapter.

Step	Action							
1	From the Paths tab, click New.							
	Result: The New Path screen appears.							
	New Path	X						
	Name:							
	Adapter:	✓						
	Endpoint type:	<b>~</b>						
	Default routing path:	~						
	SMSC;	×						
	Statistics category:							
		This is a trusted path						
		💌 Enabled						
		Help Cancel Save						
2	Fill in the Name, Ada	oter and Endpoint type fields.						
	For more informatio	n about the fields in this scre	een, see Path screen fields (on page 82).					
3	If you have selected for the endpoint type:							
	<ul> <li>MC, select a needed for t</li> </ul>		ng path field if a default routing path is					
		•						

- SME, select a value from the SMSC: drop down list
- 4 Configure any remaining fields to complete the path.
- 5 Click **Save** to save the new path record in the configuration database.

# **Editing paths**

Follow these steps to edit an existing path:

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Paths tab, select the record to edit.
2	Click Edit at the top of the tab or double-click the record.
	Result: The Edit Path 'Path_Name' screen opens.

C	Action		
	Edit Path 'SMPP_SME'	,	X
	Name:	SMPP_SME	
	Adapter:	SMPP1	
	Endpoint type:	SME	
	ASP account:	×	
	ASP short code:	×	
	Default routing path:	×	
	SMSC:	Default 💌	
	Statistics category:	SMPP_SME	
	Max messages/sec:		
		✓ This is a trusted path	
		🗹 Enabled	
	(	Help Cancel Save	
	Edit the fields to ref	lect the changes you nee	ed to make.
			screen, see Path screen fields (on page

4 Click **Save** to save the path record in the configuration database.

# **Deleting paths**

Follow these steps to delete an existing path.

Step	Action
1	From the table on the Paths tab, select the record to delete.
2	Click Delete.
	Result: The Delete Path 'Path_Name' confirmation prompt appears.
3	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.

# **Path Connections**

# Introduction

When adding a connection to a path, the input screen shown will depend on the protocol type used by the adapter.

For IP connections (EMI, SMPP, SIP), see *IP Connections* (on page 87).

For all other protocols, predefined paths and their SS7 connections are automatically added when the adapter is created. These predefined connections cannot be edited or deleted. However, more paths and connections may be added. For details, see *SS7 Connections* (on page 96).

Multiple connections can be configured for each path. These are used by Messaging Manager for receiving and delivering messages.

#### About user authorization for local and remote connections

Convergent Charging Controller provides a secure credential vault for storing the user names and passwords and for authorizing users. Messaging Manager stores the user names and passwords for local and remote connections to the secure credential vault and retrieves them when it needs to authorize a connection.

When you add an EMI or SMPP connection, you specify the local user name and password for connections into Messaging Manager and the remote user name and password for connections from Messaging Manager to a remote system. You can edit the connection to change the local or remote user password if required. See *Changing connection passwords* (on page 95) for more information.

#### Adjust connection weightings

Follow these steps to adjust the weighting that are given to each connection in a path.

Note: The weightings of connections can only be adjusted for user defined connections.

Step	Action
1	From the <b>Paths</b> tab, click <b>Adjust Weights</b> . <b>Result:</b> The Adjust Connection Weights on Path ' <i>Path_Name</i> ' screen appears.
	Adjust Connection Weights on Path 'EMI_Test'
	SMSC_A 25 Failover SMSC_B 56 Failover SMSC_C 0 Failover
	Equalise Weights
	Help Cancel Save
2	Adjust the ratio of the weighting for each connection as required. Weightings may be adjusted either by moving the slider using the mouse, or by entering a weighting ratio into the field to the right of the slider.
3	Select the <b>Failover</b> check box for any connections to be used in the case that all other connections fail.
	Note: This check box is meaningless for SS7 connections.

- 4 To set the weighting of all connections to be equal, click **Equalise Weights**.
- 5 Click **Save** to save the new connection weights.

# **Deleting connections**

Follow these steps to delete an existing connection.

Step	Action
1	From the table in the right-hand panel on the <b>Paths</b> tab, select the connection to delete.
2	Click Remove
	<b>Result:</b> The Remove Connection 'Connection_Name' confirmation prompt will appear.
3	If the connection can be deleted, click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.

# **IP** Connections

#### **Common connection fields**

This table describes the function of each field in the top part of both the EMI and SMPP connection screens.

Field	Description				
Name	The name of the connection.				
Weighting	The weighting to apply to this connection when determining which connection to use. This value is converted to a percentage of the weightings for all the connections on this path, which in turn is used as the loading factor for the connection.				
	0 (zero) to 100, where 0 is the failover connection weighting. The connection with zero weighting will be used when all other connections cannot be used.				
Enabled					
	Selected	Allow Messaging Manager to use this connection for traffic			
	Deselected	Do not allow Messaging Manager to use this connection for traffic			
Preopen					
	Selected	Messaging Manager opens this connection on startup.			
	Deselected	Messaging Manager waits for a message to open the connection			
RX					
	Selected	The remote endpoint receives messages from Messaging Manager			
	Deselected	The remote endpoint does not receive messages from Messaging Manager			
ТХ					
	Selected	Allow this connection to transmit messages (remote point of view)			
	Deselected	Do not allow this connection to transmit messages			

Field	Description
Shadowed	Available only for SMPP connections where the SMPP path endpoint is SME.(Short Message Entity).
	Selected Messaging Manager reports successful login to the ASP only after Messaging Manager logs in to the default routing path as defined in the SME path
	Deselected Messaging Manager reports successful log in to the ASP immediately
Local username	Authorized user name for Messaging Manager access from ASP.
Local password	Required password for the user name specified in the <b>Local username</b> field. When you edit a connection, a check box is displayed to the left of <b>Local password</b> . To change the local password, select the check box and enter a new password. To specify no password, leave the password field empty.
Remote username	Authorized user name for Messaging Manager to access SMSC.
Remote password	Required password for the user name specified in the <b>Remote username</b> field. When you edit a connection, a check box is displayed to the left of <b>Remote</b> <b>password</b> . To change the remote password, select the check box and enter a new password. To specify no password, leave the password field empty.
Connections allowed	Allow the same ASP to connect this number of times on the same port using the same login.
Local listen	IP address or host name of the local listener defined in eserv.config.
Port	Port number of the local listener.
Local source	The Messaging Manager local source to use for connections to a remote listener.
Port	Port number of the local source.
Remote listen	IP address or host name of the remote listener for connections from Messaging Manager.
Port	Port number of the remote listener.
Remote source	The remote source for connections to Messaging Manager.

# Adding EMI connections

Follow these steps to add a new EMI type connection to the selected path.

Step	Action
1	From the Paths tab, click Add Connection.
	Result: The New EMI Connection screen appears.

Weighting: 1					
🗹 Enabled 📃 Preope	n 🗌 RX 🛄 TX		IP address / hos	st name	Port
Local username:		Local listen:		*	
Local password:		Local source:		*	
Remote username:		Remote listen:			
Remote password:		Remote source:			
Connections allowed: 1					
EMI Options					
Window size:	100	Ale	rt poll time:	-1	
Max window queue length	n: 1024	Ale	rt address:		
Login orig. type of numbe	r: International numb	oer 🔽 🛛 Ale	rt protocol ID:	PC appl via abbre	v. no. 🔽
Login orig. number plan II	E.164 address	🔽 Ses	ssion timeout:	-1	
Default source address:		Res		ponse timeout: 4	
Allow alt, source address		Res		ponse poll time: 2	
		Def	fault protocol ID:	0	
Provide VMSC in HPLMN:					
Provide VMSC in HPLMN: Allow user time zones:					

2 Complete the fields as required in the top part of the screen. See *Common connection fields* (on page 87).

**Note:** When adding a new connection the **Save** button becomes available when you have entered content and the **Name** field.

- 3 Complete the **EMI Options** fields as required. See *EMI connection fields* (on page 89).
- 4 Click **Save** to save the new Connection record in the configuration database.

**Note:** The system determines which type of connection is required by the looking at the protocol that is used by the adapter selected when creating the path. This protocol is used to open the correct type of New Connection screen.

### **EMI connection fields**

This table describes the function of each field in the EMI Options area of the EMI Connection screen.

Field	Description
Window size	Determines the number of messages that Messaging Manager can receive from the ASP before waiting for a response.
	Allowed values: 0-100
	Default: 100

Max window queue length         When the Window size is exceeded, the messages are queued up, this parameter determines the length of the queue.           Messaging Manager can queue outgoing messages to cope with temporary peaks in outgoing load that result in the window filling up.         Messaging Manager can queue outgoing messages to cope with temporary peaks in outgoing load that result in the window filling up.           Login orig. type of number         Originator Type Of Number. Allowed values: - 1 none (default) 1 international number (starts with country code) 2 national number 6 Abtreviated number (short number alias)           Login orig. number plan ID         Originator Type Of Number. Allowed values: - 1 none (default) 1 E. 164 address 3 X121 address 5 Private (TCP/IP address/ abbreviated number if comited)           Default source address         Where there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead. This field is optional.           Allow alt source address         If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses. Default: Selected (true)           Provide VMSC in HPLMN         If use to less etadger does not perform any timezone conversion. Default: Not selected (false)           CDR information         Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format. For more information about CDR format, see <i>EDR Reference Guide</i> .           Alert address         The address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT a	Field	Description
peaks in outgoing load that result in the 'window filling up.           Default: 1024           Login orig, type           of number           Allowed values:           -1         none (default)           1         international number (starts with country code)           2         national number (starts with country code)           2         national number           6         Abbreviated number (short number alias)           Login orig.         Originator Numbering Plan ID.           number plan ID         Allowed values:           -1         none (default)           1         E.164 address           3         X121 address           5         Private (TCP/IP address/ abbreviated number if omitted)           use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead.           This field is optional.           Allow all. source           address           Default: Selected (true)           Provide VMSC in If the Wessaging Manager will populate the VMSC address in the HPLMN field if available.           Default: Not selected (false)           Allow user time           Zones           Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be en		
Login orig. type of number       Originator Type Of Number. Allowed values: -1       none (default)         1       none (default)       international number (starts with country code)         2       national number (short number alias)         Originator Numbering Plan ID. Allowed values: -1       none (default)         1       E.164 address         3       X121 address         5       Private (TCP/IP address/ abbreviated number if omitted)         Default source address       Where there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead. This field is optional.         Allow att. source address       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses. Default: Selected (true)         Provide VMSC in HPLMN       If set to true, will allow for a genericSM. If set to false the adapter converts timezone form any timezone conversion. Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is fer to ofalse the adapter does not perform any timezone Guide.         Alert poll time       How long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts. Default: 1         Alert address       The address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages. Default: 639         Session timeout       Timeou		
of number       Allowed values:         -1       none (default)         1       international number (starts with country code)         2       national number         6       Abbreviated number (short number alias)         Login orig.       Originator Numbering Plan ID.         number plan ID       none (default)         1       E.164 address         3       X121 address         5       Private (TCP/IP address/ abbreviated number if omitted)         Default source address       Where there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead.         Allow alt. source address       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses.         Default source address       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses.         Default: Selected (true)       Provide VMSC in if true Messaging Manager will populate the VMSC address in the HPLMN field if available.         Allow user time       If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM.         If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion.       Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDR. It is recommended that any informat		Default: 1024
Allowed values.         -1       none (default)         1       international number (starts with country code)         2       national number (short number alias)         Login orig.       Originator Numbering Plan ID.         Allowed values:       -1         -1       none (default)         1       E.164 address         3       X121 address         5       Private (TCP/IP address/ abbreviated number if omitted)         Default source address       Where there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead.         This field is optional.       This field is optional.         Allow alt. source address.       Default: Selected (true)         Provide VMSC in HPLMN       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source address address.         Default: Not selected (false)       If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM.         If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion.       Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format.		Originator Type Of Number.
1       international number (starts with country code)         2       national number         6       Abbreviated number (short number alias)         Originator Numbering Plan ID.         Allowed values:         -1       none (default)         1       E.164 address         3       X121 address         5       Private (TCP/IP address/ abbreviated number if omitted)         Default source       Where there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead.         This field is optional.       This field is optional.         Allow alt. source       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses.         Default: Selected (true)       Default: Selected (true)         Provide VMSC in       If true Messaging Manager will populate the VMSC address in the HPLMN field if available.         Default: Not selected (false)       If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM.         If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion.       Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field will be entered and CDR format.         For more information ab	of number	Allowed values:
2       national number         6       Abbreviated number (short number alias)         Coriginator Numbering Plan ID.         number plan ID         Allowed values:         -1       none (default)         1       E.164 address         3       X121 address         5       Private (TCP/IP address/ abbreviated number if omitted)         Default source address       Where there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead.         Allow alt. source address       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses.         Default. Selected (true)       Provide VMSC in Hrue Messaging Manager will populate the VMSC address in the HPLMN field if available.         Default: Not selected (false)       If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM.         If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion.       Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the field will be entered into the field will be entered used.         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recomm		-1 none (default)
6       Abbreviated number (short number alias)         Login orig.       Originator Numbering Plan ID.         number plan ID       Allowed values:         -1       none (default)         1       E.164 address         3       X121 address         5       Private (TCP/IP address/ abbreviated number if omitted)         Default source address       Where there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead.         Allow alt. source address       Default: Solected (true)         Provide VMSC in H fs et to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source address.         Default: Not selected (true)         Provide VMSC in H fs et to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM.         If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion.         Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format.         For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.         Allert address       The address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages.         Default: 0       Alert message.         Alert address		1 international number (starts with country code)
Login orig.       Originator Numbering Plan ID.         number plan ID       Allowed values:         -1       none (default)         1       E.164 address         3       X121 address         5       Private (TCP/IP address/ abbreviated number if omitted)         Default source address       where there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally user the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead.         Allow att. source address       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses.         Default: Selected (true)       If true Messaging Manager will populate the VMSC address in the HPLMN field if available.         Default: Not selected (false)       If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM.         If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion.       Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the cORs. The exact information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.         Alert poll time       How long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts.         Default: -1       Alert messages.         Default: 0       Alert Protocol Identifier.         Default: 639       Session timeout		
number plan ID       Allowed values:         -1       none (default)         1       E.164 address         3       X121 address         5       Private (TCP/IP address/ abbreviated number if omitted)         Default source address       Where there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead.         Allow alt. source address       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses.         Default: Selected (true)       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses.         Default: Selected (true)       If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM.         If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion.       Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format.         For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.         Alert poll time       The address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages.         Default: 0       Alert Protocol Identifier.         Default: 639       Session timeout		6 Abbreviated number (short number alias)
-1       none (default)         1       E.164 address         3       X121 address         5       Private (TCP/IP address/ abbreviated number if omitted)         Default source address       Where there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead.         Allow alt. source address       Mere there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead.         Allow alt. source address       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses.         Default: Selected (true)       Provide VMSC in Hrue Messaging Manager will populate the VMSC address in the HPLMN field if available.         Default: Not selected (false)       If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM.         If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion.       Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format.         For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.       Alert poll time         Alert poll time       How long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts.         Default: 0       Alert messages.		Originator Numbering Plan ID.
1       E.164 address         3       X121 address         5       Private (TCP/IP address/ abbreviated number if omitted)         Default source address       Where there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead.         Allow alt. source address       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses.         Default:       Selected (true)         Provide VMSC in HPLMN       If true Messaging Manager will populate the VMSC address in the HPLMN field if available.         Default:       Not selected (false)         Allow user time zones       If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM.         If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion.       Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information about CDR format, see <i>EDR Reference Guide</i> .         Alert poll time       How long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts.         Default:       0         Default:       0         Alert protocol ID       Alert Protocol Identifier.         Default:       0         Alert protocol ID       Alert Protocol Identifier.         Default:       639	number plan ID	Allowed values:
3       X121 address         5       Private (TCP/IP address/ abbreviated number if omitted)         Default source address       Where there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead. This field is optional.         Allow alt. source address s.       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses. Default: Selected (true)         Provide VMSC in HPLMN       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager the VMSC address in the HPLMN field if available. Default: Not selected (false)         Allow user time zones       If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM. If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion. Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information about CDR format, see <i>EDR Reference Guide</i> .         Alert poll time       How long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts. Default: -1         Alert address       The address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages. Default: 639         Session timeout       Timeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		-1 none (default)
5       Private (TCP/IP address/ abbreviated number if omitted)         Default source address       Where there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead. This field is optional.         Allow alt. source address       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses. Default: Selected (true)         Provide VMSC in HPLMN       If set to true, the Sesaging Manager will populate the VMSC address in the HPLMN field if available. Default: Not selected (false)         Allow user time zones       If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM. If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion. Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format. For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.         Alert poll time       How long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts. Default: -1         Alert address       The address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages. Default: 0         Alert protocol ID       Alert Protocol Identifier. Default: 639         Session timeout       Timeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		1 E.164 address
omitted)           Default source address         Where there is no source address supplied Messaging Manager will generally use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead. This field is optional.           Allow alt. source address         If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses. Default: Selected (true)           Provide VMSC in HPLMN         If true Messaging Manager will populate the VMSC address in the HPLMN field if available. Default: Not selected (false)           Allow user time zones         If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM. If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion. Default: Not selected (false)           CDR information         Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format. For more information about CDR format, see <i>EDR Reference Guide</i> .           Alert poll time         How long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts. Default: -1           Alert address         The address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages. Default: 0           Alert protocol ID         Alert Protocol Identifier. Default: 639           Session timeout         Timeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		
address       use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address to be used instead. This field is optional.         Allow alt. source address       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses. Default: Selected (true)         Provide VMSC in HTure Messaging Manager will populate the VMSC address in the HPLMN field if available. Default: Not selected (false)         Allow user time zones       If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM. If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion. Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format. For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.         Alert poll time       How long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts. Default: -1         Alert address       The address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages. Default: 0         Alert protocol ID       Alert Protocol Identifier. Default: 639         Session timeout       Timeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		omitted)
Allow alt. source address       If set to true, will allow Messaging Manager to accept Alternate Source Addresses.         Default: Selected (true)         Provide VMSC in HPLMN       If true Messaging Manager will populate the VMSC address in the HPLMN field if available.         Default: Not selected (false)         Allow user time zones       If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM.         If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion.       Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format.         For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.         Alert poll time       How long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts.         Default: -1         Alert address       The address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages.         Default: 0         Alert protocol ID       Alert Protocol Identifier.         Default: 639       Session timeout		use the Login username if supplied. This option allows a specific source address
addressAddresses.Default:Selected (true)Provide VMSC in HPLMNIf true Messaging Manager will populate the VMSC address in the HPLMN field if available. Default: Not selected (false)Allow user time zonesIf set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM. If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion. Default: Not selected (false)CDR informationUsed to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format. For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.Alert poll timeHow long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts. Default: -1Alert addressThe address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages. Default: 0Alert protocol IDAlert Protocol Identifier. Default: 639Session timeoutTimeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		This field is optional.
Provide VMSC in HPLMN       If true Messaging Manager will populate the VMSC address in the HPLMN field if available.         Default: Not selected (false)         Allow user time zones       If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM.         If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion.       Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format.         For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.         Alert poll time       How long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts.         Default: -1         Alert address       The address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages.         Default: 0       Alert Protocol Identifier.         Default: 639       Session timeout         Session timeout       Timeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		
HPLMNavailable.Default: Not selected (false)Allow user time zonesIf set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM. If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion. Default: Not selected (false)CDR informationUsed to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format. For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.Alert poll timeHow long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts. Default: -1Alert addressThe address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages. Default: 0Alert protocol IDAlert Protocol Identifier. Default: 639Session timeoutTimeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		Default: Selected (true)
Allow user time zones       If set to true, the EMI adapter converts timezones of all outgoing times using the user timezone from a genericSM.         If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion.       Default: Not selected (false)         CDR information       Used to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format.         For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.         Alert poll time       How long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts.         Default: -1         Alert address       The address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages.         Default: 0       Alert Protocol Identifier.         Default: 639       Session timeout         Session timeout       Timeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		
zonesuser timezone from a genericSM. If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion. Default: Not selected (false)CDR informationUsed to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format. For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.Alert poll timeHow long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts. Default: -1Alert addressThe address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages. Default: 0Alert protocol IDAlert Protocol Identifier. Default: 639Session timeoutTimeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		Default: Not selected (false)
Default: Not selected (false)CDR informationUsed to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format. For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.Alert poll timeHow long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts. Default: -1Alert addressThe address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages. Default: 0Alert protocol IDAlert Protocol Identifier. Default: 639Session timeoutTimeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		
CDR informationUsed to allow connection based static information to be added to the CDRs. The exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format. For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.Alert poll timeHow long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts. Default: -1Alert addressThe address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages. Default: 0Alert protocol IDAlert Protocol Identifier. Default: 639Session timeoutTimeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		If set to false the adapter does not perform any timezone conversion.
exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR format. For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.Alert poll timeHow long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts. Default: -1Alert addressThe address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages. Default: 0Alert protocol IDAlert Protocol Identifier. Default: 639Session timeoutTimeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		Default: Not selected (false)
Alert poll time       How long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts.         Default: -1       Default: -1         Alert address       The address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages.         Default: 0       Default: 0         Alert protocol ID       Alert Protocol Identifier.         Default: 639       Timeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.	CDR information	exact information entered into this field will be entered into the CDR. It is recommended that any information entered into this field uses standard CDR
Default: -1         Alert address       The address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages.         Default: 0       Default: 0         Alert protocol ID       Alert Protocol Identifier.         Default: 639       Timeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		For more information about CDR format, see EDR Reference Guide.
Alert address       The address of Messaging Manager that is sent to the message centre in MT alert messages.         Default: 0       Default: 0         Alert protocol ID       Alert Protocol Identifier.         Default: 639       Session timeout         Timeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.	Alert poll time	How long, in seconds, to wait before polling for alerts.
alert messages.         Default: 0         Alert protocol ID         Alert Protocol Identifier.         Default: 639         Session timeout         Timeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		Default: -1
Alert protocol ID       Alert Protocol Identifier.         Default: 639         Session timeout       Timeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.	Alert address	alert messages.
Default: 639           Session timeout         Timeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.		Default: 0
	Alert protocol ID	
Default: -1 (that is, it never times out)	Session timeout	Timeout (in seconds) for the EMI connection to the ASP.
		Default: -1 (that is, it never times out)

Field	Description				
Response timeout	Determines the time in seconds that the IP adapter listener will wait for a response from the ASP to any EMI message it sends.				
	However, a distinction is made between messages queued for transmission because the connection is down and those which have been sent.				
	MM does not timeout responses for sent messages. Therefore the backup route will not be tried unless a negative response is received or if the connection is already down.				
	Default: 4				
Response poll	The length of time (in seconds) between polls.				
time	Default: 2				
Default protocol	Default Protocol Identifier.				
ID	Default: 64				

# **Editing EMI connections**

Follow these steps to edit an existing EMI type connection.

Step	Action
1	From the table on the right-hand panel of the Paths tab, select the record to edit.
2	Click Edit at the bottom of the screen or double-click the record.
	<b>Result:</b> The Edit EMI Connection ' <i>Connection_Name</i> ' screen opens, where <i>Connection_Name</i> is the name of the selected connection.
3	Update the fields as required. See <i>Common connection fields</i> (on page 87) and <i>EMI connection fields</i> (on page 89) for information about the available connection fields.
4	Click <b>Save</b> to save the connection record in the configuration database.

# **Example Edit EMI Connection dialog**

Here is an example edit connection dialog for the EMI protocol. In this example, the name of the connection is XMSP11.

Name: XMS	PI1					
Weighting: 10						
Tenabled Preope	n 📝 RX 📝 TX			IP address / ho	st name	Port
.ocal username: m1		Local I	isten:		•	1234
.ocal password:		Local s	source:		<b>•</b>	0
Remote username: r1		Remot	te listen:	cwm.me.uk		1234
Remote password:		Remot	te source:			
Connections allowed: 1						
EMI Options						
Window size:	100		Alert	poll time:	-1	
Max window queue lengt	h: 1024		Alert	address:	0	
Login orig. type of numb	er: International nu	mber 👻	Alert	protocol ID:	PC appl via abbrev	/. no. 👻
Login orig. number plan I	D: E. 164 address	-	Sess	ion timeout:	-1	
Default source address:			Resp	onse timeout:	4	
Allow alt. source address	: 🔽		Resp	onse poll time:	2	
Provide VMSC in HPLMN:			Defa	ult protocol ID:	65	
Allow user time zones:						
CDR information:						

# Adding SMPP connections

Follow these steps to add a new SMPP connection to the selected path:

Step	Action
1	From the Paths tab, click Add Connection
	Result: The New SMPP Connection screen appears.

Step Action	
New SMPP Connection	X
Name:	
Weighting: 1	
TX Enabled Preopen RX TX	Shadowed IP address / host name Port
Local username:	Local listen:
Local password:	Local source:
Remote username:	Remote listen:
Remote password:	Remote source:
Connections allowed: 1	
SMPP Options	
SMPP version: 3.4	Max. concurrent transactions: 1024
	Outgoing timeout: 10
System ID: MMX	Idle timeout: 0
System type: MMX	Heartbeat interval: 0
	Augment IDs eSG Extensions
	Help Cancel Save
[	

Complete the fields as required in the top part of the screen. See *Common connection fields* (on page 87).

**Note:** When adding a new connection the **Save** button becomes available on entering the **Name** field.

- 3 Complete the **SMPP Options** fields as required. See *SMPP connection fields* (on page 93).
- 4 Click **Save** to save the new connection record in the configuration database.

**Note:** The system determines which type of connection is required by the looking at the protocol that is used by the adapter selected when creating the path. This protocol is used to open the correct type of New Connection screen.

### **SMPP** connection fields

2

This table describes the function of each field in the SMPP Options area of the SMPP Connection screen.

Field	Description
Version	The version of SMPP that will be used by default.
	Default: 0x34 (version 3.4)
System ID	ID of Messaging Manager application. Used on SMPP messages.
	Default: Oracle MMX
System type	System type on SMPP messages.
	Default: MMX
Max. concurrent	Number of concurrent transactions allowed per second.
transactions	Default: 1024
Outgoing timeout	Timeout, in seconds, on outgoing side.

Field	Description
	Default: 10
Idle timeout	How long a connection may be idle for.
	Default: 0
Heartbeat interval	Specifies the length of time to wait after receiving a message from the peer until an enquire_link message is sent. The connection will be closed if an enquire_link_resp (or any other kind of message) within the time specified by outgoingTimeout is not received.
	Default: 0 (that is, no heartbeats sent)
Augment IDs	If selected, the message ID sent back to the ASP by MM will be prefixed with the correlation ID from the outgoing SMSC connection.
	<b>Note:</b> This field is only available for SMPP connections in an ASP path.
Correlation ID	The correlation ID of the SMPP SMSC connection.
	Notes:
	• This field is only available for SMPP connections in an SMSC path.
	• The Correlation ID allows two connections to be related, by placing the same smscCorrelationId setting for both connections. It is used where there are different connections used for rx and tx to the SMSC and they need to be related, for example, so they can use the same name in persistent store keys. For more information, see <i>MM Technical Guide</i> .
eSG Extensions	Whether to transmit non-standard data on this connection. That is, is the path used to communicate with SEI instead of an SMPP ASP.

# **Editing SMPP connections**

Follow these steps to edit an existing SMPP type connection.

Step	Action
1	From the table on the right-hand panel of the Paths tab, select the record to edit.
2	Click Edit at the bottom of the screen or double-click the record.
	<b>Result:</b> The Edit SMPP Connection ' <i>Connection_Name</i> ' screen opens, where <i>Connection_Name</i> is the name of the selected connection.
3	Update the fields as required. See <i>Common connection fields</i> (on page 87) and <i>SMPP connection fields</i> (on page 93) for more information about the available fields.
4	Click Save to save the connection record in the configuration database.

# Example Edit SMPP Connection dialog

Here is an example edit connection	dialog for the SMF	P protocol.	In this example,	the name of the
connection is XMSP12.				

Name:	XMSPI2						
Weighting:	10						
V Enabled	Preopen 📝 F	х 🔽 тх	Shadowed		IP add	dress / host name	Port
local username:	m2			Local listen:			◄ 4321
local password:				Local source:			▼]0
Remote username:	r2			Remote listen:	cwm.	me.uk	4321
Remote password:				Remote source:			
Connections allowe	d: 1						
SMPP Options							
	SMPP version:	3.4	▼ Max.	concurrent transac	tions:	1024	
			Outg	oing timeout:		10	
	System ID:	eSG MMX	Idle t	imeout:		0	
	System type:	MMX	Heart	beat interval:		0	
			F 4	ugment IDs		eSG Extensions	

# Changing connection passwords

Follow these steps to change the password of the local or remote user for an EMI or SMPP connection.

Step	Action
1	From the table on the right-hand panel of the Paths tab, select the record to edit.
2	Click Edit at the bottom of the screen or double-click the record.
	Result: The Edit protocol Connection 'Connection_Name' screen opens.
	Note: You can also edit a connection record from the Asps tab.
3	Select the check box to the left of the password field you want to change. Result: The password field is enabled.
4	Enter a new password in the password field. To specify no password, leave the password field empty.
5	Click Save.
	The new password is saved in the credentials vault.

# **SS7** Connections

### Adding SS7 connections

Follow these steps to add a new SS7 type connection to the selected path.

•	•		
Step	Action		
1	From the Paths tab, click Ade	d Conne	ection
	Result: The New SS7 Conne	ection sc	reen appears.
New SS7 Conr	nection		×
	This routing scheme i	is currently de	ployed on 1 SCP
Name:		🔽 Enabled	1
📃 Inbound		🗌 Outbou	nd
Remote PC:	(Any) Match any PC	PC;	0
	SCCP Calling Party point code (exact match)		SCCP Called Party point code. At least one of GT and PC is required.
Remote SSN:	(Any) Match any SSN	SSN:	8

SCCP Called Party subsystem number (required)

SCCP Called Party global title Translation Type

Help Cancel

SCCP Called Party global title Digits

0 % 🔽 Failover

2 Enter a name for the connection.

SCCP Calling Party subsystem number (exact match)

SCCP Calling Party global title (prefix match)

Match any GT

3 The inbound connection is used for matching the inbound path. The outbound connection sets the connection for outbound messages. Both are allowed.

If required, select one or both check boxes.

Result: The fields below each check box will become active.

Note: The Save button becomes available if you select the Inbound check box.

4 Complete the fields as required See SS7 connection fields (on page 97) below.

**Note:** If you select only the **Outbound** check box the **Save** button becomes available after you have entered a PC and an SSN in the fields.

5 Click **Save** to save the new connection record in the configuration database.

**Note:** The system determines which type of connection is required, by the looking at the protocol that is used by the adapter selected when creating the path. This protocol is used to open the correct type of New Connection screen.

### **Virtual SMSCs**

You can create virtual SMSCs in order to provide different services to different groups of end users. The users are provided with the Service Centre Address (SCA) of the virtual SMSC instead of the "real" SMSC's SCA. This allows Messaging Manager to route based on the SCA to which the message is addressed and provide different services based on the SCA.

Messaging Manager allows the inbound path assigned to a message to be based on the SMSC SCA:

- To which the message is addressed, in the case of mobile originated messages
- Received from, in the case of mobile terminated messages

#### **SS7** connection fields

These tables describes the function of each field.

#### In and Outbound

Here are the fields available for both inbound and outbound paths.

Field	Description
Name	The name of the connection.
Enabled	Is this connection available for traffic?

#### Inbound

Here are the fields available for inbound path.

Field	Description
Remote PC	The SCCP calling party point code This parameter takes priority over SSN match.
Remote SSN	The SCCP calling party subsystem number.
Remote GT	The SCCP calling party global title (prefix match).

Note: Each of these fields is active only if the Match any check box beside it is not selected.

#### Outbound

Here are the fields available for outbound path.

Field	Description
PC	The SCCP called party point code This parameter takes priority over SSN match.
SSN	The SCCP called party subsystem number.
GT	The SCCP called party global title (prefix match).
ТТ	The translation type of the SCCP called party GT.
Weight	The relative load for this connection on the path. This value is converted to a percentage of all the connection weights on this path which in turn is used as the loading factor for the connection.
	Allowed values: 0 to 100.
Failover	There is no concept of failover for SS7 connections, so this field is ignored.
Congestion threshold	Whenever this number of consecutive congestion responses is received, the SMSC will not be used until the back-off period expires.
	<b>Note:</b> This field is only available if the destination point is an SMSC (that is, endpoint type is MC).
Congestion	If congested, the number of seconds to wait before retrying the SMSC.
backoff	<b>Note:</b> This field is only available if the destination point is an SMSC (that is, endpoint type is MC).

### **Editing SS7 connections**

Follow these steps to edit an existing SS7 connection:

Step	Action
1	From the table on the right hand panel on the Paths tab, select the record to edit.
2	Click Edit at the bottom of the screen or double-click the record.

Result: The Edit SS7 Connection 'Connection\_Name' screen appears.

lame:	MAP_MC_2MAP_AUTO		🗹 Enabled	
Inbound			Outbound	
emote PC:	(Any)	Match any PC	PC:	0
	SCCP Calling Party poi	nt code (exact match)		SCCP Called Party point code. At least one of GT and F is required.
emote SSN:	(Any)	Match any SSN	SSN:	8
	SCCP Calling Party sub	osystem number (exact match	)	SCCP Called Party subsystem number (required)
emote GT:	(Any)	Match any GT	GT:	0
	SCCP Calling Party glo.	bal title (prefix match)		SCCP Called Party global title Digits
CA/SMSC:	(Any)	Match any SMSC	TT:	0
	Service centre address	(exact match)		SCCP Called Party global title Translation Type
			Weight:	0 % Failover
			Congestion threshold:	messages
			Congestion backoff:	seconds
				Help Cancel Save

4 Click **Save** to save the new connection record in the configuration database.

# Screening

### Introduction

The **Screening** tab controls the screening-out of undesired messages, by allowing the creation of rules that check various message parameters such as originating and destination addresses.

The top part of the tab contains the current list of rules for the selected transaction type.

The bottom part of the tab shows any extra details available for the currently selected rule.

#### Monitoring screening rules

If a screening rule is in monitoring state, the rule is not applied. Instead an EDR is written recording the SMS/call details, and the screening rule ID for the rule which would have blocked the SMS/call.

**Note:** If a rule is in monitoring state, an EDR will be written regardless of whether the **Write EDR** check box is selected for that rule.

For more information about EDR post-processing, see EDR Reference Guide.

# Screening tab

Here is an example of a **Screening** tab.

🖸 SU - Messaging Manager Scheme 'Doc SMS GW'								
New Edit Delete Refresh Close Help								
Adapters Interfaces Paths Screening Addressing Throttling Triggering Routing								
All Rules	All Rules Monitor Only							
Transaction type: Deliver								
Rule ID	Rule Name	Action	Monitor Mode	Write EDR	Last Updated	By		
1	Calling Party Filter	Accept	No	Yes	08/Oct/2010 09:48:45	SU		
2	Delivery Sequence Correlation	Reject (12)	No	Yes		SU		
)	Destination Address Screening	Screen	No	Yes	Screening rule list	SU		
ŧ	Isolated Delivery Detection	Accept	No	Yes	00/000/2010 09:50:47	SU		
							•	
Global Title Screening Rules       - these rules are global and apply to all routing schemes         Global title:       322342         Find       Add								
Global Title Allow Screening rules for								
32234 selected Rule and Action								
322342								
1 global title prefix removed								
1 global	the prenx removed							

**Note:** The columns on this screen can be expanded or collapsed in the same way as for the **Paths** tab. For more information about how to use this functionality, see *Adjusting panel displays* (on page 74).

### Screening tab columns

This table describes the content of each column. This table is sorted by rule name.

Column	Description				
Rule ID	The numeric ID for the rule. This is auto-generated on creation of the rule.				
	Note: This field cannot be changed after it is first saved.				
Rule Name	One of the rule types in screening rule list.				
	Note: This field cannot be changed after it is first saved.				
Action	The action that will be taken if this rule causes the message to fail screening.				
	Notes:				
	• This does not apply to the originating and the destination address screening rules, as these will specify an action for each configured prefix.				
	This field cannot be changed after it is first saved.				
Monitor Mode	Whether or not this rule is in monitor state. YES or * means the rule is in monitor state.				
	For more information about monitoring, see <i>Monitoring screening rules</i> (on page 25).				
Write EDR	Indicator for EDR production when the rule is invoked.				
	If the rule is in monitor state, and the rule has been set to not write EDRs, this column will show * and EDRs will be written until the rule is moved from				

Column	Description
	monitoring to applying.

# Screening rule fields

This table describes the function of each field.

Field	Description				
Transaction type	The type of message being handled by Messaging Manager, selected from a configured list. Allowed values:				
Rule type	The name given to the rule, selected from a built-in list, as described in <i>Screening rule list</i> (on page 25).				
Action	The action the rule will perform when invoked, selected from a configured list. <b>Allowed values:</b> Accept Do not do anything with the message, but return				
	an ACK to the originator. Discard Drop the message without sending any response to the originator.				
	Reject Do not do anything with the message, and send an error back to the originator.				
Release cause	The error code to use that explains the reject reason. See Action and Error Codes (on page 139).				
Monitor mode	Do not apply this rule. Instead monitor the effect this rule would have if it was applied. For more information about monitoring, see <i>Monitoring screening rules</i> (on page 25).				
Write EDR	Causes an EDR to be written when the rule is invoked.				
	<b>Note:</b> This value is ignored if the rule is in monitoring state. A rule is being monitored if its <b>Monitor this rule</b> check box is selected, or the <b>Monitor</b> check box on the <b>Screening</b> option is selected.				

# **Screening rule list**

The set of screening rules available is different for each transaction type as shown in the following table.

Rule Type	Submit	Deliver	Notify	RouteInfo
Calling Party Filter (on page 25)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Delivery Sequence Correlation (on page 26)		Y	Y	
Destination Address Screening (on page 26)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Isolated Delivery (on page 26)		Y	Y	
Layer Address Correlation (on page 26) (GSM	Y	Y	Y	Y

Rule Type	Submit	Deliver	Notify	RouteInfo
only)				
Originating Address Screening (on page 27)	Y	Y	Y	
Roaming Location Validation (on page 27)	Y			

Notes:

- Screening rules are not applied to traffic from any path which has the **This is a trusted path** check box selected. For more information about this check box, see *Path screen fields* (on page 82).
- To use the full screening capabilities, a valid screening license must be purchased. Unlicensed
  users will only have access to the originating address screening and destination address screening
  rules.

## **Calling Party Filter**

This check is used to:

- Screen out (blacklist) known rogue entities on the network (pirates)
- Allow (white list) known safe entities

A message will be screened if all of the following apply:

- It is received on a path that is does not have the This is a trusted path check box selected
- The "Calling Party Filter" rule is configured for the message's transaction type

• The message's SCCP calling party global title is matched by the screened global title list When this rule is selected the *Global Title Screening Rules* (on page 105) panel is displayed on the screen.

## **Delivery Sequence Correlation**

If an inbound deliver or notify message is received on a path that is not flagged as trusted and the "Delivery Sequence Correlation" rule is specified, Messaging Manager will compare the message parameters with the corresponding RouteInfo that was previously received. Message parameters are matched as follows, and the message is screened out if any of the comparisons fail:

MT SMS Field	Expected Value
SCCP Calling Party	SCCP calling party of the RouteInfo
SCCP Called Party	GT returned by Messaging Manager in response to the RouteInfo
SCA	SCCP calling party of the RouteInfo

#### **Destination Address Screening**

Destination address screening rules check the digits of the destination address against a configured list of prefixes. For each address prefix, an address rule will specify that the message has either passed or failed screening.

If the address rule is a:

- 'pass' rule, it will assign a destination domain for subsequent processing.
- 'fail' rule, it will specify the action to take.

When this rule is selected the Destination *Screening Rules* (on page 109) panel is displayed in the bottom part of the screen.

### **Isolated Delivery**

When a mobile-terminated SMS (MAP MT-ForwardSM and IS41 SMDPP) is received, the isolated delivery rule checks that a RouteInfo message (HLR lookup) was received before the SMS. If a delivery sequence correlation rule (described above) is also used, Messaging Manager will check that the details in the two requests match up.

If MSID masking is on, or an Accept action is used, MM responds to incoming RouteInfo messages with a temporary IMSI (or MIN). This means that when a subsequent deliver or notify message is received, it will use the MM-generated IMSI, so can be linked with the previous RouteInfo.

If an inbound deliver or notify message is received on a path that is not flagged as trusted, the "Isolated Delivery" rule will check that the IMSI corresponds to one that was previously generated in response to a RouteInfo. The message will be screened out if this is not the case.

#### Layer Address Correlation

When a message is received, MM can do a basic check to ensure that the parameters provided in the SCCP layer and MAP layer are consistent.

If this rule is used and a MAP message is received on a path that is not flagged as trusted, MM will verify that the prefixes of the following MAP and SCCP address match:

Message Type	SCCP Field	MAP Field
RouteInfo	CallingParty	Service Centre Address
Deliver / Notify	CallingParty	SM-RP-OA
Submit	CalledParty	SM-RP-DA

The number of digits to compare for the SCA Consistency check is determined by finding the longest country prefix matching the address, in the SCA Consistency Rules (on page 106) panel displayed in the bottom part of the screen.

## **Originating Address Screening**

This rule checks the digits of the originating address against a configured list of prefixes. For each address prefix, an address rule will specify that the message has either passed or failed screening.

If the address rule is a:

- 'Pass' rule, it will assign an originating domain for subsequent processing
- 'Fail' rule, it will specify the action to take

When this rule is selected the Originating *Screening Rules* (on page 109) panel is displayed in the bottom part of the screen.

#### **Roaming Location Validation**

An additional correlation check can be applied to mobile-originated SMSs (MAP MO-ForwardSM and IS41 SMDPP) to validate that when a message comes from a local subscriber via a foreign network, that subscriber is actually known to be roaming.

If a mobile-originated SMS is received on a path that is not flagged as trusted, this rule will force Navigator to query the HLR to determine the MSC serving the originating subscriber. A message will pass if the Calling Party SCCP Address and MSC address from the HLR match, to the determined number of digits.

When this rule is selected the *RLV Prefix Rules* (on page 111) panel is displayed in the bottom part of the screen.

## Adding Screening rules

Follow these steps to add a screening rule.

 Step
 Action

 1
 From the Screening tab, select the transaction type for the required rule from the Transaction Type drop down list.

 Note: The New button is unavailable when all allowable rules have been added for the transaction type. No more rules can be added.

 2
 From the Screening tab, click New.

 Result: The New SAS Rule screen appears with the selected transaction type prepopulated.

 New SAS Rule

 Rule Identification

 Transaction type:
 Deliver

 Rule type:
 Calling Party Filter

 Rule Processing

New SAS Rule		$\sim$
Rule Identification		
Transaction type:	Deliver 🔽	
Rule type:	Calling Party Filter 🛛 👻	
Rule Processing		
Action:	~	
Release cause:	×	
	Monitor Mode	
	Vrite EDR	
	Help Cancel Save	

3 Select the new rule from the **Rule type** drop down list.

Note: This list shows what rules can still be added to the selected transaction type.

4 Select the action this rule will perform from the **Action** drop down list.

Note: This list shows all the allowed actions for the rule type.

5 If the reject action was selected, select the ACS release cause number form the **Release** cause drop down list.

**Note:** This list shows all the allowed ACS release cause numbers that have been configured. See *Action and Error Codes* (on page 139).

- Complete the rest of the fields on the screen.
   For more information about the rest of the fields on this screen, see *Screening rule fields* (on page 100).
- 7 Click **Save** to save the new rule record in the configuration database.

## **Editing Screening rules**

Follow these steps to edit a screening rule.

Step	Action		
1	Transaction Type drop de Result: A list of rules fo	r the transaction type are shown.	rule from the
Z	<ul> <li>From the Screening tab, click Edit.</li> <li>Result: The Edit SAS Filter Rule '<i>Rule_Id</i>' screen appears.</li> </ul>		
	Edit SAS Filter Rule 81		
	Rule Identification		
	Transaction type:	Deliver	
	Rule type:	Originating Address Screening 💌	
	Rule Processing		
	Action:	Reject	
	Release cause:	×	
		Monitor Mode	
		Vrite EDR	
		Help Cancel Save	
3	To cause an EDR to be box.	e generated when this rule is invoked, selec	t the Write EDR check

4 Click **Save** to save the new rule record in the configuration database.

## **Delete Screening rules**

Follow these steps to delete a screening rule.

Step	Action
1	From the <b>Screening</b> tab, select the transaction type for the required rule from the <b>Transaction Type</b> drop down list.
	Result: A list of rules for the transaction type are shown.
2	From the table on the <b>Screening</b> tab, select the record to delete.
	Note: The default originating or destination address rules cannot be deleted.
3	Click <b>Delete</b> .
	Result: The Delete SAS Rule 'Rule_Name' confirmation prompt appears.
4	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.

## **Global Title Screening Rules**

### Introduction

Global title screening defines originating global title (GT) prefixes that are one of the following short messages when calling party filter is active for the transaction type:

- Barred from sending
- Allowed to send

Note: The screening is global, that is, the list applies to all routing schemes.

When applying a rule, the system goes through the list and applies the longest, starting with the same digits, prefix rule. For example, 44 will be applied over 4, 4 over a blank prefix.

## **Global Title Screening Rules panel**

Here is an example Global Title Screening Rules panel of the Screening tab.

This panel is visible when you select the Calling Party Filter (on page 25) rule type.

Global Title Screening Rules - these rules are global and apply to	o all routing s	chemes		
Global title: Eind Add		E	<u>∢</u> emove Selected	
Global Title	Allow	Last Updated	Ву	
		Thu Nov 15 02:49:23 GM	SU	^
32234		Tue Nov 13 22:20:14 GM	MMX_ADMIN	
322343		Tue Nov 13 22:20:14 GM	MMX_ADMIN	
				~
This SAS rule (ID 29) was last updated by SU on 14/Nov/2007 at	: 01:23:45 usi	ng terminal 12700000100	11	

## **Rules buttons**

This table describes the function of each button, specific to the panel, at the bottom of the tab.

Button	Description
Add	Add a new rule.
<u>F</u> ind	Locates a rule containing the entered digits.
Remove Selected	Deletes the selected rule.

Note: Buttons are active depending on the selection context.

#### Finding a rule

Follow these steps to find a rule.

Step	Action
1	Enter the number string to find in the Global title field.
	Result: The Find button becomes available.
2	Click Find.

Step	Action
	Result: The first rule containing the entered string is highlighted.
3	Click Find repeatedly to cycle through the rules containing the entered string.

### Adding a rule

Follow these steps to add a rule.

Step	Action
1	Type the prefix number string to add as a new rule in the <b>Global title</b> field and click <b>Add</b> . <b>Result:</b> The typed number is added to the list.
	<b>Note:</b> You can add a blank prefix. In this case, if there are no other prefixes that override the rule, then the rule will apply to all prefixes.
2	<ul> <li>In the Allow check box, to:</li> <li>Blacklist this prefix, deselect the box</li> <li>Allow the prefix, select the box.</li> </ul>

#### **Removing a rule**

Follow these steps to remove a screening rule.

Step	Action
1	Locate and select the rule to delete. Either use the scroll bar or the Finding a rule procedure.
2	Click Remove Selected.
	Result: The Remove Global Title Prefix 'Global_Title' confirmation prompt appears.
3	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.

## **SCA Consistency Rules**

## Introduction

The SCA consistency rules are available when *Layer Address Correlation* (on page 26) is selected as the rule type.

This check is for MAP messages only and confirms that the MAP layer and SCCP layer are consistent with their calling and called party addresses. The SCA consistency rules match the SCCP address against the country prefix and then compare the MAP and SCCP addresses based on the match length digits value.

Note: The SCA consistency rules are global and apply to all routing schemes.

## SCA Consistency Rules panel

Here is an example SCA Consistency Rules panel of the Screening tab.

SCA Consistency Rules	- these rules are global and	apply to all routing schemes		
Country Prefix:	Eind Add	Edit	<u>R</u> emove Selected	
Country Prefix	Match Length	Last Updated	Ву	
343	3	12/Mar/2009 22:11:02	SU 🔥	
			<b>∨</b>	
1 SCA consistency rule removed				
This SAS rule (ID 86) w	as last updated by SU on 12AV	lar/2009 at 21:55:04 using termin	al 192.168.7.63	

This panel is visible when you select the *Layer Address Correlation* (on page 26) rule type.

### **Rules buttons**

This table describes the function of each button, specific to the panel, at the bottom of the tab.

Button	Description
<u>A</u> dd	Add a new rule.
<u>E</u> dit	Edit an existing rule.
<u> </u>	Locates a rule containing the entered digits.
Remove Selected	Deletes the selected rule.

Note: Buttons are active depending on the selection context.

## **Finding SCA Consistency Rules**

Follow these steps to find SCA consistency rules.

Step	Action
1	Type the prefix number string to find in the Country prefix field.
	Result: The Find button becomes available.
2	Click Find.
	Result: The first rule containing the entered string is highlighted.
3	Click Find repeatedly to cycle through the rules containing the entered string.

## Adding SCA Consistency Rules

Follow these steps to add new SCA consistency rules.

Step	Action
1	Click Add
	Result: The New SCA Consistency Rule screen appears.

Step	Action
	New SCA Consistency Rule
	Country Prefix: Digits to Match: 1
	Help Cancel Save

- 2 Enter the prefix digits to compare in the **Country Prefix** field.
- 3 The number of digits to compare is automatically calculated, but this can be overridden if required by selecting from the **Digits to Match** drop down list.
- 4 Click **Save** to save the new SCA consistency rule record in the configuration database.

### **Editing SCA Consistency Rules**

Follow these steps to edit SCA consistency rules.

Step	Action			
1	Locate and select the SCA consistency rule to edit. Use either the scroll bar or the <i>Finding SCA Consistency Rules</i> (on page 107) procedure.			
2	Click Edit			
	Result: The Edit SCA Consistency Rule 'Country_Prefix' screen appears.			
	Edit SCA Consistency Rule: '343'			
	Country Prefix: 343			
	Digits to Match: 5			

- 3 Override the number of digits to compare by selecting from the **Digits to Match** drop down list.
- 4 Click **Save** to save the SCA consistency rule record in the database.

## **Deleting SCA Consistency Rules**

Follow these steps to delete a SCA consistency rule.

Step	Action
1	Locate and select the SCA consistency rule to delete. Use either the scroll bar or the <i>Finding SCA Consistency Rules</i> (on page 107) procedure.
2	Click Remove Selected.
	Result: The Remove SCA Consistency Rule 'country prefix' confirmation prompt appears.
3	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.

## **Screening Rules**

### Introduction

....

Screening rules apply to both destination and originating addresses. This topic illustrates how to configure originating address rules. There is no procedural difference between the destination and originating address types.

## Screening Rules panel

Here is an example Screening Rules panel of the Screening tab.

This panel is visible when you select the *Destination Address Screening* (on page 26), or *Originating Address Screening* (on page 27) the rule type.

Path Prefix Filter		Path Prefix	Originating Address Prefix	Action	Release Cause
	^	MAP_SME_MAP2	31	Accept	▲
31 33 MAP_SME_MAP2		This screening rule (I	D 21) was last updated by SU on 14/N		
Show <u>A</u> ll <u>R</u> emove	e			<u>A</u> dd	<u>E</u> dit <u>R</u> emove

## Screening rule panel buttons

This table describes the function of each button, specific to the **Screening Rules** panel, at the bottom of the tab.

Button	Description
<u>A</u> dd	Add a new screening rule.
<u>E</u> dit	Edit an existing screening rule.
<u>R</u> emove	Deletes the selected path prefix filter (and all rules that use the filter), or deletes the selected path prefix screening rule.
Show All	Shows all the screening path prefix rules.

Note: Buttons are active depending on the selection context.

## Screening Rules fields

This table describes the function of each field.

Field	Description
Path_Direction path name prefix	The path prefix filter.
Path_Direction address prefix	The address prefix.

Field	Description	
Perform action	The drop down list is the action which will be attached to the screening rule. You can select from:	
	Allow	
	Accept (this drops the call)	
	Reject	
	Discard	
Release cause	If the perform action drop down list has the reject action selected, this field is the error code which will be returned with the reject message.	
	<b>Note:</b> These are defined on the <b>Global</b> <i>tab</i> (on page 141) of the Action and Error Codes screen.	

#### **Adding Screening rules**

Follow these steps to add new destination or originating address screening rules.

Step	Action
1	Select the Path Prefix Filter to add the rule to.
	<b>Note:</b> If this is a rule for a new filter, this step can be ignored and the filter is added as part of adding the rule.
2	Click Add. Result: The Add Address_Type Screening Rule screen appears.
	Add Originating Screening Rule
	This routing scheme is currently deployed on 1 SCP

-	rrently deployed on 1 SCP
Screening selection criteria	
Incoming path name prefix:	MAP_SME_MAP2
Originating address prefix:	
Screening response	
Perform action:	Allow
Release cause:	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
[]	Help Cancel Save

- 3 If missing, type the path prefix filter in the *Path\_Direction* path name prefix field.
- 4 Continue to configure this record by entering data in the fields in the middle of this screen. For more information about the fields on this screen, see *Screening Rules fields* (on page 109).
- 5 If the **Reject** action selected, select the error code from the **Release cause** drop down list.
- 6 Click **Save** to save the new screening rule record in the configuration database.

## **Editing screening rules**

Follow these steps to edit destination or originating address screening rules.

Step	Action										
1	From the Screening tab, sel	ect the Path Prefix to	edit from the Screening Rules panel table.								
2	Click Edit										
	Result: The Edit Address_Type Screening Rule screen appears.										
	Edit Originating Screening Rule     Image: Comparison of the second										
	Screening selection criteria										
	Incoming path name prefix:	MAP_SME_MAP2									
	Originating address prefix:	31									
	Screening response										
	Perform action:	Accept	✓								
	Release cause:										
		<u> </u>									
	_										
3	Edit the fields to reflect the	changes you need t	o make.								
	For more information abou 109).	t the fields in this sci	reen, see Screening Rules fields (on page								

4 Click **Save** to save the screening rule record in the configuration database.

## **Deleting screening rules**

Follow these steps to delete Destination or Originating Address Screening Rules.

Step	Action
1	From the <b>Screening</b> tab, select the <b>Path Prefix</b> to delete from the Screening Rules panel table.
2	Click Delete.
	Result: The Remove Screening Rule screen appears.
3	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.

## **RLV Prefix Rules**

## Introduction

The RLV prefix rule allows you to configure how many digits must match for the roaming location validation check.

The number of digits to match can be configured based on the address prefix.

When doing the roaming location validation check, MM will compare the MSC address from the HLR against the configured prefixes to determine how many digits to match.

A message will pass the roaming location validation check if the calling party SCCP address and MSC address from the HLR match, to the determined number of digits.

#### **RLV Prefix Rules panel**

Here is an example RLV Prefix Rules panel of the Screening tab.

**Note:** This panel is visible when you select the *Roaming Location Validation* (on page 27) rule type. Roaming location validation rule types are only available for submit rules.

Prefix:	Eind Add		Edit <u>R</u> emo	we Selected
Prefix	Match Length	Last Updated	By	
21	2	08/Jul/2008 04:11:28		
555	4	08/Jul/2008 03:09:45		

#### **Rules buttons**

This table describes the function of each button, specific to the panel, at the bottom of the tab.

Note: Buttons are active depending on the selection context.

Button	Description				
Add	Add a new rule.				
<u>E</u> dit	Edit an existing rule.				
<u>F</u> ind	Locates a rule containing the entered digits.				
Remove Selected	Deletes the selected rule.				

#### **Finding RLV Prefix Rules**

Follow these steps to find RLV prefix rules.

Step	Action
1	Enter the prefix number string to find in the <b>Prefix</b> field.
	Result: The Find button becomes available.
2	Click Find.
	Result: The first rule containing the entered string is highlighted.
3	Click Find repeatedly to cycle through the rules containing the entered string.

## **Adding RLV Prefix Rules**

Follow these steps to add new RLV prefix rules.

Step	Action									
1	Click <b>Add</b> . <b>Result:</b> The New RLV Prefix Rule screen appears.									
	New RLV Prefix Rule									
	Prefix:									
	Digits to Match: 1									
2	Enter the prefix digits to compare in the <b>Prefix</b> field.									
	Note: You can add a blank prefix. In this case, if there are no other prefixes that override									

- 3 The number of digits to compare is automatically calculated, but this can be overridden if required by selecting from the Digits to Match drop down list.
- 4 Click Save to save the record in the database.

the rule, then the rule will apply to all prefixes.

#### **Editing RLV Prefix Rules**

3

Follow these steps to edit RLV prefix rules.

#### Step Action 1 Locate and select the RLV prefix rule to edit. Use either the scroll bar or the Finding RLV Prefix Rules (on page 112) procedure. 2 Click Edit.... .и. ть

Result: The Edit	RLV Prefix Rule 'Prefix' s	cree
Edit RLV Prefix R	ule: '123'	×
Prefix:	123	
Digits to Match:	3	
l	Help Cancel Save	]

en appears.

- Override the number of digits to compare by selecting from the Digits to Match drop down list.
- 4 Click **Save** to save the record in the database.

### **Deleting RLV Prefix Rules**

Follow these steps to delete an RLV prefix rule.

Step	Action
1	Locate and select the RLV prefix rule to delete. Use either the scroll bar or the <i>Finding RLV Prefix Rules</i> (on page 112) procedure.
2	Click Remove Selected.
	Result: The Remove RLV Prefix Rule 'Prefix' confirmation prompt appears.
3	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.

## Addressing

#### Introduction

The Addressing tab enables you to:

- Add, update and remove address rules for originating and destination prefixes for each path prefix
- Add, update and remove domains
- Select a domain to map each rule against

Each message that enters the system is assigned to a domain for each of its originating and destination addresses. Domains are configured as a group, so all routing and triggering changes are applied to the entire domain. A domain allows specification of throttling levels. Additionally, it plays a role in determining control plan selection and routing selection.

Any given routing scheme defines a single set of domains which are used to classify both originating and destination addresses. The originating and destination domains are used to determine the outbound route. Each domain may contain as many address rules as required.

A domain is defined by the set of domain address rules which reference it. A domain is associated with a single scheme, and a domain address rule belongs to a single domain in that scheme.

A domain address rule identifies a set of addresses and associates that set with a set of paths. The address set is specified by an address prefix (for example, 00644) and a message type, (for example, Normal, delivery receipt, non-delivery receipt).

An address is considered to be a member of the set defined by the rule if the leading characters of the address match the address prefix and the message type matches the specified type.

The set of paths is identified by a path prefix which works in the same fashion as the address prefix, so a path is considered to be a member of the paths set defined by the rule if the leading characters of the path's name match the path prefix specified in the rule.

## Addressing tab

Here is an example Addressing tab.

O SU - Messaging Manager Scheme 'Doc SMS GW'										
New Edit	Delete Refresh	Close						Help		
Adapters Interface	es Paths Screening	Addressing	Throttling Trigge	ring Routing						
Path Prefix	Originating Prefix Domain		Destination Prefix	Domain		Domain	Updated	By		
<u>^</u>		<u>~</u>		rom SMSC	^	Default	15/Jul/2010 10:5			
Default	(Reject)		()	Reject)		EMAIL	08/Oct/2010 10:4			
EMAIL						From SMSC	16/Jul/2010 13:4			
Local						Local	08/Oct/2010 10:4	. 50		
SMSC Remove	Add Edit Re	move	Add Edit	Remove	>	New (	Edit Delete	)		
Local (ID 62) was last u	pdated by SU on 08/Oct/2010	at 10:46:55 us.	ing terminal 192.168.	25.81						

### **Pre-populated screen areas**

The following areas of the Addressing tab will be pre-populated, if you have created a new scheme:

• With a default domain:

Adapters	Interfaces	Paths	Screenin	ng Addressin	9 Throttlin	g	Triggering	Routing	
Path Prefix	Originating	Domain		Destination	Domain		Domain	Updated	
		Default	^		Default	^	Default	05/Mar/2009	9 02

• With no default domain:

A	dapters	Interfaces	Paths	Scre	enin	g Addressin	g Throttling		Triggering	Routing	
Pat	th Prefix	Originating	Domain			Destination	Domain		Domain	Updat	ed
			(Reject)				(Reject)	^			
								~	Contain		

The default path prefix is blank, therefore the default address rules will apply to any prefix.

A default rule with a (Reject) domain is created when there is no domain applied.

#### Adding a Path Prefix

The Path Prefix area lists the path prefixes that have address rules defined.

A new path prefix is added when you create an address rule that is not attached to any path prefix. See *Adding Address rules* (on page 116) for details.

## **Removing a Path Prefix**

Follow these steps to remove a path prefix.

Step	Action	
1	In the table in the Path Prefix area, select the prefix to remove.	
2	Click Remove.	
	Result: The Delete Path Prefix confirmation dialog is displayed.	
	Delete Path Prefix	
	Are you sure you want to remove all addressing rules under this path prefix? This routing scheme is currently deployed on 1 SCP Remove Don't Remove	
3	Click Remove to delete the path prefix and all its addressing rules or Don't Remove to	

Click **Remove** to delete the path prefix and all its addressing rules or **Don't Remove** to cancel the delete.

#### **Adding Address rules**

Follow these steps to add new destination or originating address rules.

**Note:** Address rules must be allocated to a domain. If there are no domains in the list, you need to *Adding domains* (on page 118) before you add a rule.

Step	Action
1	Select the Path Prefix to add the rule to.
	<b>Result:</b> The originating and destination prefixes for the selected path prefix are displayed in the tables to the right.
	<b>Note:</b> If this is a rule for a new filter, this step can be ignored and the filter is added as part of adding the rule.
2	In the table for the required address type, click Add.
	Result: The New Address_Type Address Rule screen opens.

New Originating Address Rule			
This routing scheme is currently deployed on 1 SCP			
Domain:	Accept		
Incoming path name prefix:			
Address prefix:			
	Help Cancel Save		

3 In the **Domain** field, select the domain to map the rule against.

**Note:** If the domain is not in the list, you need to click **Cancel** and *Adding domains* (on page 118) before you add a rule.

4 In the **Incoming path name prefix** field, enter the prefix.

Step	Action	
	Note: This field is pre-populated with the path prefix selected in Step 1.	
5	In the Address prefix field, enter the prefix.	
6	Click <b>Save</b> to save the new rule record in the configuration database.	
	<b>Result:</b> Rules are created in pairs. For example, if you create an originating address rule, a destination address rule for the path prefix will be created with a default domain of (Reject).	

## **Editing address rules**

Follow these steps to edit a destination or originating address rule.

Step	Action		
1	Select the Path Prefix of the rule to edit.		
	<b>Result:</b> The originating and destination prefixes for the selected path prefix are displayed in the tables to the right.		
2	In the table for the required address type, click <b>Edit</b> . <b>Result:</b> The Edit Address Rule screen appears.		
	Edit Address Rule		
	Domain:     Local       Incoming path name prefix:     I		
	Address prefix: 02 <u>H</u> elp Cancel <u>Save</u>		

3 If required, modify the fields, as described in *Adding Address rules* (on page 116).

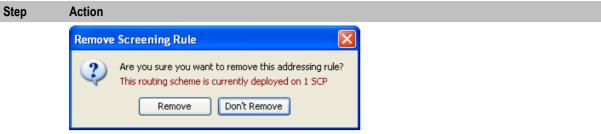
**Note:** If this is a default rule, the '(Reject)' domain is included in the list, otherwise, only the defined domains appear in the list.

4 Click **Save** to save the rule record in the configuration database.

#### **Removing Address rules**

Follow these steps to remove an address rule from either an originating or destination prefix.

Step	Action	
1	In the table in a Prefix Area of the Addressing tab, select the record to remove.	
2	Click Remove.	
	Result: The Remove Screening Rule confirmation prompt appears.	



3

Click **Remove** to delete the rule or **Don't Remove** to cancel the delete.

#### Adding domains

Follow these steps to add a new domain to the scheme.

 Step
 Action

 1
 From the Domain area of Addressing tab, click New.

 Result: The New Domain screen opens.

 New Domain

 Name:

 Help

 Cancel

2 In the **Name** field, enter the name of the new domain.

**Note:** Domain is defined within the context of a single routing scheme, and must have a unique name within that scheme.

3 Click **Save** to save the new domain record in the configuration database.

#### **Editing domains**

3

Follow these steps to edit an existing domain.

 Step
 Action

 1
 In the table in the Domain area of Addressing tab, select the domain record to edit.

 2
 Click Edit.

 Result: The Edit Domain 'Domain\_Name' screen opens.

Edit Doma	in 'MAP Inbound'	×
Name:	MAP Inbound	]
	Help Cancel Save	

Change the field value as required.

Note: Changing the name will be reflected everywhere this domain is used within the scheme.

Step	Action
4	Click <b>Save</b> to save the changed domain record in the configuration database.

## **Deleting domains**

Follow these steps to delete an existing domain:

Step	Action
1	In the table in the Domain area of Addressing tab, select the record to delete.
2	Click <b>Delete</b> .
	Result: The Delete Domain 'Domain_Name' confirmation prompt appears.
3	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.

## Throttling

#### Introduction

The **Throttling** tab provides a summary report of the throttling values for the selected scheme. This tab allows you to define throttling rules in terms of Originating Domain, Destination Domain, and Message Type (Detection Point).

A throttling rule defines the conditions that must be met to throttle a message at a particular limit, specifically in terms of the message's originating & destination Domains and message type. For each message received or generated internally, MM evaluates the message against the throttling rules table to determine if the message is to be throttled.

This provides the ability to implement throttling rules for scenarios such as preferring subscribersubscriber messages to tele-voting messages, or putting a system-wide throttle on ASP outbound traffic.

For example, tele-voting may be recognized by the destination prefix address of "778". The system may be configured so that tele-voting messages will be throttled when the message rate reaches 80% of the maximum system throughput. The remaining 20% is always available for non tele-voting destinations.

## Throttling tab

Here is an example of the Throttling tab.

SU - Messaging Manager Scheme 'Doc SMS GW'				
New Edit	Delete Refresh C	lose	Help	
Adapters Interfaces	Paths Screening Addr	essing Throttling Trigg	jering Routing	
Detection Point	Destination Domain	Originating Domain	Throttle %	
Deliver	Default	Default	100 🖌	
Notify	EMAIL	Local	100	
This throttling rule /(0, 0, was	s last undated by SLL on 08/Oct/	This throttling rule (ID 1) was last updated by SU on 08/Oct/2010 at 10:54:59 using terminal 192.168.25.81		

## Throttling rules fields

This table describes the content of each field.

Column/Field	Description		
Detection Point	The transaction type the throttling rule applies to. Possible values are:         Deliver         Notify         Route Info         Submit         For more information about transaction types, see <i>Transaction Types</i> (on page 18).         Required.		
Destination Domain	The Domain to which the message's destination number belongs. Required.		
Originating Domain	The Domain to which the message's originating number belongs. Required.		
Throttle at	The level at which throttling is to be applied to messages of this type when overload conditions apply. Required.		
	A percentage of the system maximum concurrent transactions, from 0 to 100 Inclusive.		
	0 = Throttle (reject) all messages of this type.		
	100 = No Throttling, allow all messages of this type.		

For more information about Domains, see Address Domains (on page 27).

## Adding Throttling rules

Follow these steps to add throttling rules.

## Step Action

1

From the Throttling tab, click New.

Result: The New Throttling Rule screen appears.

New Throttling Rule	X		
This routing scheme is currently deployed on 2 SCPs			
Detection point:	✓		
Destination domain:	~		
Originating domain:	~		
Throttle at:	100 %		
Help	Cancel Save		

2 Select values required in each field as described in *Throttling rules fields* (on page 120).

3 Click **Save** to save the record in the configuration database.

## **Editing Throttling Rules**

Follow these steps to edit an existing Throttling Rule

Step	Action		
1	From the table on the Throttling tab, select the	ne record to edit.	
2	Click Edit.		
	<b>Result:</b> The Edit Throttling Rule screen appears with the data for the rule selected populated.		
	Edit Throttling Rule		
	This routing scheme is currently deployed on 2 SCPs		
	Detection point: Deliver		
	Destination domain: Default 💌		
	Originating domain: Default		
	Throttle at: 100 %		

3 Change the fields, as described in *Throttling rules fields* (on page 120), as required.

Save

4 Click **Save** to save the Throttling rule in the configuration database.

Cancel

Help

## **Deleting Throttling Rules**

Follow these steps to delete a throttling record from the database.

Step	Action
1	From the table on the Throttling tab, select the record to delete.
2	Click <b>Delete</b> .
	Result: The Delete Throttling Rule confirmation prompt appears.
3	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.

## Triggering

#### Introduction

The **Triggering** tab enables you to add and maintain Trigger rules. Triggering rules enable MM to decide whether to trigger the message to an ACS control plan for processing, or directly apply an action.

There are four sets of trigger rules:

- 1 Submit
- 2 Deliver
- 3 Notify
- 4 Route Info

The Detection point field indicates the set to which the rule belongs.

A trigger rule can optionally specify a routing class. If present, this will be assigned to the message, replacing the existing class when the rule is matched to the message.

A trigger rule either specifies an action to perform, or details of a control plan to invoke. If a control plan is used, the result that it returns to Messaging Manager will determine the action.

## **Trigger control**

Each Message Type (Submit, Deliver, Notify and Route Info) has its own trigger rules. The transaction is matched against the appropriate rule set to determine the trigger action.

The selected rule may specify a change to the routing class. For example, with a Submit transaction, it is useful to set the trigger routing class to "FDA" so that a First Delivery Attempt becomes the default routing action. This alleviates the need to always set the value to "FDA" in the SMS Service Plan (if it is triggered).

Any change to the routing class occurs regardless of whether the trigger fires or not. If the trigger rule has an SMS Control Plan defined, and the trigger is active, then service control triggering occurs and the SMS Control Plan is invoked to monitor and control the message delivery.

## **Triggering tab**

Here is an example of the Triggering tab.

🖸 SU - Messaging Manager Scheme 'Doc SMS GW'							
New	New Edit Delete Refresh Close Help						
Adapters	Interfaces	Paths Scree	ning Addres	sing	Throttling Trigg	ering Routing	
Detection point:	Deliver 🔽						
Dest, Domain	Dest. Addr	Action	Set Routing		ACS Customer	Call Plan	
Default		Route	Deliver				<u>^</u>
Local							
	<u> </u>						<u>~</u>
i his trigger rule	(ID 2) was last	updated by SU	on 08/0ct/2010	) at 12:5:	1:51 using termina	192.168.25.81	

## **Triggering fields**

This table describes the fields that form part of the selection criteria when deciding which (if any) trigger rule to use.

Field	Description	
Detection point	The transaction type of the message.	
	Allowed values:	
	Deliver	
	Submit	
	Notify	
	Route Info	
	See Transaction Types (on page 18) for details.	
Originating Domain Trigger rule applies to messages which have this originating domain information, see <i>Screening Rules</i> (on page 109).		
	Notes:	
	• Either <b>Originating Domain</b> or <b>Originating Address prefix</b> must be defined, but not both.	
	• This field is only available when a Submit detection point is selected.	
Originating	Trigger rule applies to messages which use this originating address (prefix).	
Address prefix	Notes:	
	• Either Originating Domain or Originating Address prefix must be defined, but not both.	
	This field is only available when a Submit Detection Point is selected.	

Field	Description
Destination Domain	Trigger rule applies to messages which have this destination domain. See <i>Screening Rules</i> (on page 109).
	Notes:
	• Either <b>Originating Domain</b> or <b>Originating Address prefix</b> must be defined, but not both.
	• This field is only available when a Deliver, Notify or Route Info detection point is selected.
Destination	Trigger rule applies to messages which use this destination address (prefix).
Address prefix	Notes:
	• Either <b>Originating Domain</b> or <b>Originating Address prefix</b> must be defined, but not both.
	• This field is only available when a Deliver, Notify or Route Info detection point is selected.

**Note:** The originating and destination address can be any operator specific number used by an ASP; for example 2222. Telephone numbers cannot be used.

This table describes the rest of the trigger rule fields.

Field	Description
Perform action	What action the trigger is to perform if NOT triggering a control plan.
	Allowed Values:
	Accept
	Discard
	Reject
	Relay (Route Info detection point only)
	Route
	Route Unchanged (Route Info detection point only)
	For more information about triggering to control plans, see <i>Triggering</i> (on page 122, on page 29).
Release cause	If you set <b>Perform action</b> to Reject, then select the release cause to send back to the switch from the <b>Release cause</b> list.
	<b>Note:</b> You configure the release causes listed in this field on the <b>Global</b> <i>tab</i> (on page 141) of the Action and Error Codes screen.
Set routing class	Select <b>Set routing class</b> when you want to override the default routing class for SMS messages. You select the routing class override from the predefined list of routing classes.
	Note: Available for relay or route actions only.
	The list of supported routing classes depends on which detection point you select. The Deliver, Notification and Submit detection points support these routing classes: • Deliver • FDA

Field	Description
	Submit
	The default Routing Info detection point supports only the Locate routing class.
	For more information about routing classes, see <i>Routing Class</i> (on page 20).
Trigger a call plan in ACS	Select this check box if you want messages to trigger an ACS control plan.
Use scheduled call plan if present	Select this check box if you want the control plan that is scheduled for the ACS customer to be used.
Use this named call plan	Select this check box if you want to specify the control plan to use. You specify the customer who owns the control plan in the <b>ACS customer</b> field, and the name of the control plan in the <b>Call plan</b> field.
ACS customer	Enter the ACS customer who owns the named control plan.
	<b>Note:</b> This field is a searchable combo field. For more information about how combo boxes can be used, see Combo boxes.
Call plan	Enter the name of the control plan that this rule uses.
	<b>Note:</b> This field is a searchable combo field. For more information about how combo boxes can be used, see Combo boxes.

## Adding Triggering rules

Follow these steps to add a new Triggering Rule to the selected Scheme.

Step	Action		
1	On the <b>Triggering</b> tab, select the <b>Detection Point</b> that the trigger rule is to apply to and click <b>New</b> .		
	<ul> <li>Result:</li> <li>1 For a 'Deliver', 'Notify' or 'Route Info' Detection Point the following New Trigger Rule screen appears, or</li> <li>2 For a 'Submit' Detection Point the New Trigger Rule screen appears with Originating Domain and Originating Address prefix instead of Destination Domain and Destination Address prefix.</li> </ul>		

tep Action	
New Trigger Rule	
This ro	outing scheme is currently deployed on 2 SCPs
Trigger Selection Criteria	
Detection point:	Deliver
Destination Domain:	
Destination Address prefix:	
Trigger Processing	
<ul> <li>Perform action:</li> </ul>	Route
Release cause:	
Set routing class:	Deliver
<ul> <li>Trigger a call plan in ACS</li> </ul>	
-	
Use scheduled call plan if	present
Use this named call plan	
ACS customer:	
Call plan:	
	Please press ENTER after keying customer or call plan names. This will cause the value entered to be retrieved and validated.
	You can search in either field by entering partial names.
	Note that a limit of 100 rows is returned in each list. If you cannot
	find the item you're looking for, please narrow your search criteria.
	Help Cancel Save
	<u>H</u> elp Cancel <u>S</u> ave
Select or ente	er the fields, as described in <i>Triggering field</i> s (on page 1

3 Click **Save** to save the new Triggering rule in the configuration database.

## **Editing Triggering rules**

Follow these steps to update an existing Triggering rule.

Step	Action	
1	From the table on the Triggering tab, select the record to edit.	
2	Click Edit.	
	Result: The Edit Trigger Rule screen appears.	

S	tep Action		
ĺ	Edit Trigger Rule		$\mathbf{X}$
	This r	outing scheme is currently deployed on 1 SCP	
	Trigger Selection Criteria		
	Detection point:	Deliver 🗸	
	Destination Domain:	Local	
	Destination Address prefix:		]
	Trigger Processing		
	O Perform action:	Accept	
	Release cause:		]
	Set routing class:	Deliver	]
	💿 Trigger a call plan in ACS		
	Use scheduled call plan if	present	
	Use this named call plan		
	ACS customer:	Boss 🗸	1
	Call plan:	PME_Delivery	,
		Please press ENTER after keying customer or call plan names. This will cause the value entered to be retrieved and validated.	
		You can search in either field by entering partial names.	
		Note that a limit of 100 rows is returned in each list. If you cannot	
		find the item you're looking for, please narrow your search criteria	ı.
			_
		<u>H</u> elp Cancel <u>S</u> ave	
3	Select or com	plete the fields, as described in <i>Triggering field</i> s (or	n page 123), as required.

4 Click **Save** to save the Triggering rule in the configuration database.

## **Deleting Triggering rules**

Follow these steps to delete an existing Triggering rule.

Step	Action
1	From the table on the Triggering tab, select the record to delete.
2	Click <b>Delete</b> . <b>Result:</b> The Delete Trigger Rule <i>'Rule_Name</i> ' confirmation prompt appears.
3	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.

## Routing

## Introduction

The **Routing** tab enables you to enter and maintain rules that define what paths are used and the sequence they are used in.

## **Routing tab**

Here is an example of the **Routing** tab.

🖸 SU - Mess	aging Manage	r Scheme 'Doc	SMS GW'		
New	Edit D	elete Re	fresh Clos	ie	Help
Adapters	Interfaces	Paths Scree	ning Addres	sing Throttling Triggering Routing	
Routing class:	Deliver 🔽				
Dest, Domain	Orig. Domain	Dest. Addr	Orig. Addr	Paths	
	From SMSC	447123		ASP SMPP 447123	~
	From SMSC	447321		ASP 5MPP 447321	
	EMAIL	447222		ASP SMPP 447222 (and 1 other)	
					~
This routing ru	ile (ID 163) was	last updated by	SU on 08/Oct/2	2010 at 12:59:55 using terminal 192.168.25.81	

## **Routing fields**

This table describes the function of each field.

Field	Description
Routing class	The routing class type for this outbound route. Allowed values: • Deliver • Submit • Locate
SMSC	The SMSC to use for this outbound route. <b>Note:</b> This field is only available when a Submit Routing class is selected.
Destination domain	SMSs with this destination domain will use this outbound route if no better match is configured. This field is populated by the Domains panel for this routing scheme.
	<ul> <li>Notes:</li> <li>Either Destination domain or Destination address prefix must be defined, but not both.</li> <li>This field is only available when a Deliver or Locate Routing class is selected.</li> </ul>

Field	Description
Destination address prefix	SMSs with this destination address prefix will use this outbound route if no better match is configured.
	The destination address prefix to use for this outbound route.
	Notes:
	• Either Destination domain or Destination address prefix must be defined, but not both.
	This field is only available when a Deliver or Locate Routing class is selected.
Originating domain	SMSs with this originating domain will use this outbound route if no better match is configured.
	This field is populated by the Domains panel for this routing scheme.
	<b>Note:</b> Either Originating domain or Originating address prefix must be defined, but not both.
Originating address prefix	SMSs with this originating address prefix will use this outbound route if no better match is configured.
	<b>Note:</b> Either Originating domain or Originating address prefix must be defined, but not both.
Paths sequencing	List of paths available to this outbound route. Can be selected and manipulated into any desired preferential sequence.
	Note: Disabled paths will not appear in this drop down list.
Retries	The number of times to retry the path before proceeding to try the next path in the list.
	<b>Note:</b> These fields are available for MAP and IS-41 protocols only, for EMI and SMPP protocols the entry fields are disabled (as shown for the Deliver and Submit screen examples above).
Interval	The duration in seconds between retrying a path.

## Adding Routing rules

Follow these steps to add a new routing rule:

Step	Action
1	On the <b>Routing</b> tab, select the <b>Routing class</b> that the routing rule is to apply to and click <b>New</b> .
	Result: One of the following screens appear depending on the Routing class:
	a 'Deliver' Routing class:

Chapter 5, Messaging Manager Schemes 129

Action	
New Routing Rule	
This routin	g scheme is currently deployed on 1 SCP
Routing class:	Submit 🗸
SMSC:	Default
Originating domain:	×
Originating address prefix:	
Paths sequencing	
CDMA1_SMSC	×
	Retries: 0 Interval: 0 Add
Path	Retries Interval
	<u></u>
	<u>~</u>
	Move Up Move Down Remove
	Help Cancel Save

b 'Submit' Routing class:

New Routing Rule This routing	g scheme is currently deployed on 1 SCP
Routing class:	Deliver
Destination domain:	×
Destination address prefix:	
Originating domain:	×
Originating address prefix:	
Paths sequencing	
EMAIL_SME_Email1	Retries: 0 Interval: 0 Add
Path	Retries Inte
	Move Up Move Down Remove
	Help Cancel Save

c 'Locate' Routing class:

Action	
New Routing Rule	
This routin <u>c</u>	scheme is currently deployed on 1 SCP
Deutine daeu	
Routing class:	Locate
Destination domain:	<b></b>
Destination address prefix:	
Paths sequencing	
IS41_CDMA_SME_CDMA1	~
	Retries: 0 Interval: 0 Add
Path	Retries Inte
	<u> </u>
	✓
	Move Up Move Down Remove
	Help Cancel Save
	as described in <i>Pouting fields</i> (on page 12

- 2 Select or enter the fields, as described in *Routing fields* (on page 128), as required.
- 3 Select a path to use for this Route from the **Paths sequencing** drop down list.
- 4 Click **Add** to add the selected path to the list of paths to use.
- 5 Repeat steps 3 and 4 until all required paths are listed.
- 6 Select each path in turn and enter their number of retries and duration (seconds) between retries in the **Retries** and **Interval** fields.

Click **Update** to save the values.

**Note:** These fields are available for MAP and IS-41 protocols only, for EMI and SMPP protocols the entry fields are disabled (as shown for the Deliver and Submit screen examples above).

- 7 Sort the path list into the desired sequence by selecting the path and then clicking **Move Up** or **Move Down**.
- 8 Click **Save** to save the new routing rule in the configuration database.

## **Editing Routing rules**

Follow these steps to edit an existing routing rule:

Step	Action
1	On the Routing tab, select the Routing Class for the routing rule to update.
	Result: All rules for the selected routing class are displayed in the table.
2	From the table in the Routing tab, select the record to edit.
3	Click Edit.
	Result: The Edit Routing Rule screen applicable to the Routing class for the selected

Step	Action
	record appears.
4	Select, enter or sort the fields, as described in Routing fields (on page 128), as required.
5	Click Save to save the routing rule to the configuration database.

## **Deleting Routing rules**

Follow these steps to delete an existing routing rule:

Step	Action
1	In the table in the Routing tab, select the record to delete.
2	Click <b>Delete</b> .
	Result: The Delete Routing Rule 'Route_Name' confirmation prompt appears.
3	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.

# **Messaging Manager Replication Screen**

## Overview

#### Introduction

Replication is the process used to ensure several instances of databases are kept synchronized. This chapter explains the Messaging Manager replication process.

### In this chapter

This chapter contains the following topics.

Messaging Manager Replication	135
Messaging Manager Replication Screen	
Replication	

## **Messaging Manager Replication**

### Introduction

Configuring Messaging Manager replication enables you to replicate MM data only to nodes which are running MM. Setting up replication has three parts:

- 1 Configuring Messaging Manager replication
- 2 SMF database synchronization across the platform
- 3 Messaging Manager run time synchronization.
- For more information about replication, see SMS User's Guide.

## **Configuring MM replication**

The **Replication** tab on the Messaging Manager Replication screen enables you to specify which nodes receive Messaging Manager data through replication.

#### SMF database synchronisation

The replication process copies all the updates to the SCP database on each SLC, as defined by SMS Node Management, **Table Replication** tab.

Replication configuration is set up by clicking the **Create Config File** button in SMS replication screen. For more information about the SMS replication process, see *SMS User's Guide*.

#### MM run time synchronization

On a regular basis MM Multigate checks MM database tables for any changes made. When found, the differences are extracted and copied to the run time Messaging Manager configuration. This technique allows for Messaging Manager configuration to continuously be updated without the need to stop and restart.

For more information about how to configure the configuration checking period, see loadIntervalSeconds parameter in *MM Technical Guide*.

## **Messaging Manager Replication Screen**

#### Introduction

The Messaging Manager Replication screen enables you to configure which nodes receive MM data. It has only one tab, the **Replication** tab.

### Accessing the Messaging Manager Replication screen

Follow these steps to open the Messaging Manager Replication screen.



- 2 Select Messaging Manager.
  - Select Replication.

3

Result: The Messaging Manager Replication screen displays.

#### Messaging Manager Replication screen

Here is an example of the Messaging Manager Replication screen.

🖸 SU - Messaging	Manager Replication	
New Edit.	Delete, Refresh Close	Help
Replication		
Node Number	Description	Replicated
01	SCP	
51	BE	
		Apply

## Replication

#### Introduction

The **Replication** tab enables you to specify which nodes (SLCs) should have Messaging Manager data replicated to them.

#### **Configuring Messaging Manager replication**

Follow these steps to flag the Messaging Manager nodes to be included in replication.

Step	Action
1	Open the Messaging Manager Replication screen.

Step	Action	
O SU - Messa	aging Manager Replication	
New	Edit Delete Refresh Close	Help
Replication		
Node Number	Description	Replicated
301 351	SCP BE	
		Apply
2	Review the listed Messaging Manager not	les. In each Replicated check b

Review the listed Messaging Manager nodes. In each **Replicated** check box, perform one of the following actions:

- Select, to have the node replicated
- Deselect, to stop the node from being replicated
- 3 Click **Apply** to save to the database.

**Result:** SMS will update the "Allocated Replication Groups" in "Table Replication" for all selected nodes.

Chapter 7

# Messaging Manager Action and Error Codes

## Overview

#### Introduction

This chapter explains how to configure the reject action error codes.

#### In this chapter

This chapter contains the following topics.

Action and Error Codes Global Action and Error Codes SMPP	140
EMI144 MAP	
IS-41 SIP 149	
Release Cause Mapping Error Mapping	

## **Action and Error Codes**

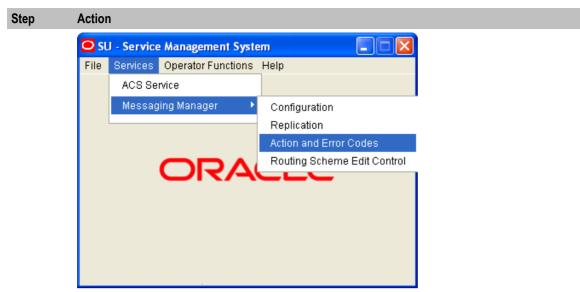
#### Introduction

The Action and Error Codes configuration allows error codes to be mapped to release causes, and vice versa, and to identify the default release cause for the Reject action (the Discard and Accept actions have permanent, fixed cause values).

#### Accessing Messaging Manager Action and Error Codes

Follow these steps to open the Messaging Manager Action and Error Codes screen.

Step	Action
1	Select the Services menu from the SMS main screen.



- 2 Select Messaging Manager.
- 3 Select Action and Error Codes.

Result: You see the Messaging Manager Action and Error Codes screen.

For more information about:

- The screen's content and how to enter configuration information, see the other topics in this chapter.
- How all the information works together to create the Messaging Manager configuration, see *Configuration Scenarios* (on page 165).
- Logging into the Service Management System screen, see SMS User's Guide.

#### **Release Cause and Error Mappings panels**

Each protocol-specific tab (that is, all the tabs except for the Global tab) have two panels:

- 1 Release Cause Mappings panel at the top
- 2 Error Mappings panel at the bottom

Each panel has its own set of New, Edit and Delete buttons in the top right of the panel. These buttons enable you to work with the records in the corresponding panel.

## **Global Action and Error Codes**

#### Introduction

The **Global** tab displays the global list of action and error codes which define ACS Release Cause values and corresponding error types which may be mapped to protocol-specific error codes.

#### Global tab

Here is an example Global tab.

New Edit	Delet	te Refresh Close					Help
ACS Release Cause	Error Type	Description	Is Default	Path Fail	Last Updated	By	
	Transient	Network resource shortage		No	27/Oct/2010 22:59:45	MMX_ADMIN	
	Transient	Network failure		No	27/Oct/2010 22:59:45	MMX_ADMIN	
	Transient	Invalid Teleservice ID		No	27/Oct/2010 22:59:45	MMX_ADMIN	
	Transient	Other network problem		No	27/Oct/2010 22:59:45	MMX_ADMIN	
	Transient	Service centre congestion		No	27/Oct/2010 22:59:45	MMX_ADMIN	
	Transient	PLMN system failure		No	27/Oct/2010 22:59:45	MMX_ADMIN	
	Transient	HLR system failure		No	27/Oct/2010 22:59:45	MMX_ADMIN	
	Transient	VLR system failure		No	27/Oct/2010 22:59:45	MMX_ADMIN	
	Transient	Previous VLR system failure		No	27/Oct/2010 22:59:45	MMX_ADMIN	
0	Transient	Controlling MSC system failure		No	27/Oct/2010 22:59:45	MMX_ADMIN	
1	Transient	VMSC system failure		No	27/Oct/2010 22:59:45	MMX_ADMIN	
.2	Transient	EIR system failure		No	27/Oct/2010 22:59:45	MMX_ADMIN	
3	Transient	Bad gateway		No	27/Oct/2010 22:59:45	MMX_ADMIN	
1	Permanent	Encoding problem		Yes	27/Oct/2010 22:59:44	MMX_ADMIN	
2	Permanent	Missing expected parameter		Yes	27/Oct/2010 22:59:44	MMX_ADMIN	
23	Permanent	Missing mandatory parameter		Yes	27/Oct/2010 22:59:44	MMX_ADMIN	
24	Permanent	Unrecognized parameter value		Yes	27/Oct/2010 22:59:44	MMX_ADMIN	
25	Permanent	Unexpected parameter value		Yes	27/Oct/2010 22:59:43	MMX_ADMIN	
:6	Permanent	User Data size error		Yes	27/Oct/2010 22:59:43	MMX_ADMIN	
27	Permanent	Invalid parameter		Yes	27/Oct/2010 22:59:43	MMX_ADMIN	
28	Permanent	Error in address service centre		Yes	27/Oct/2010 22:59:43	MMX_ADMIN	
.9	Permanent	Invalid absolute Validity Period		Yes	27/Oct/2010 22:59:43	MMX_ADMIN	
30	Permanent	Short message exceeds maximum		Yes	27/Oct/2010 22:59:43	MMX_ADMIN	
31	Permanent	Unable to Unpack GSM message		Yes	27/Oct/2010 22:59:44	MMX_ADMIN	

#### **Global fields**

This table describes the content of each editable column.

Field	Description
ACS Release	The release cause value posted to Messaging Manager by ACS.
Cause	<b>Note:</b> The maximum allowed value is 118. Higher values are internal system defaults that cannot be changed.
Error Type	The type of error this cause number represents. Values are Permanent, Transient, Abort.
Description	What the error cause number represents.
Is Default	Indicates if the cause is the default for the Reject, Discard, or Accept actions.
	<b>Note:</b> You are able to modify only the default Reject action. The other actions are predefined.
Path Fail	<ul> <li>Whether or not the error code causes a bypass of retires on the current path.</li> <li>The default for: <ul> <li>Transient failures is "No" (clear box). You can change this to "Yes" if required.</li> <li>Permanent and Abort failures is "Yes" (ticked box). These errors will always cause a path failure. The check box will be ticked and disabled.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

2

#### Adding Global Release Cause

Follow these steps to add a Global Release Cause.

See Global fields (on page 141) for a description of each field.

In the ACS Release Cause field, enter the release cause number.

Note: Must be a unique number, less than 118.

- 3 Enter the description for the release cause in the **Description** field.
- 4 Select the type of error for this release cause from the **Error Type** drop down list.
- 5 Select the **Path Failure** check box if you wish this release cause to be a path failure.
- 6 Select the default action for this release cause from the **This is the default action for** drop down list.

**Note:** Select the Reject option if this release cause is to be used as the new global reject action cause. For everything else, select null option.

7 Click **Save** to save the new release cause record in the configuration database.

#### **Editing Global Release Cause**

Follow these steps to edit a global error code.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Global tab, select the ACS release cause to edit.
2	From the Global tab screen, click Edit.
	Result: The Edit Release Cause 'Code_Number' screen opens.

Step	Action		
	Edit Release Cause '1003'	×	
	ACS Release Cause: Description:	1003 Abort - XMS_REL_INT_ABORT	
	Error type:	Transient	
	Path Failure: This is the default action for:		
		Help Cancel Save	
3	Change the fields as req	uired. See Global fields (on pa	ge 141) for a description of each

- field.
- 4 Click **Save** to save the release cause record in the configuration database.

#### **Deleting Global Release Cause**

Follow these steps to delete a Global Release Cause.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Global tab, select the ACS release cause to delete.
2	Click Delete.
	Result: The Delete Release Cause 'Cause_Number' screen opens.
3	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.
	Note: To delete this code, it must have already been removed from the protocols.

## SMPP

#### Introduction

The SMPP tab defines, for this protocol, the:

- Error codes returned to the caller for each ACS release cause
- ACS release cause for each error code

#### SMPP tab

Here is an example SMPP tab.

	d Error Codes		
<u>N</u> ew <u>E</u> dit.	<u>D</u> elete	<u>R</u> efresh Close	e <u>H</u> elp
SMPP			
i	<u>.</u>		
If it cannot be det	termined by the rules	below, SMPP Comm	nand Status is derived from the type of error
Transie	ent failure: ESME_	RX_T_APPN (0x64)	
Parma	nent failure: ESME	RX P APPN (0x65)	
renna	nencialiare. ESIME_	///_/_AFF/(0x00)	
Abort:	ESME_	RSYSERR (0x0C)	
		Release Cause Map	pings New Edit Delete
ACS Delease Cause	Error Type	SMPP Command S	Lact Updated By
ACS Release Cause		SMPP Command S	
.1	Permanent	11	11/Mar/2009 00:45 MMX_ADMIN
1 2		11 69	11/Mar/2009 00:45 MMX_ADMIN 411/Mar/2009 00:45 MMX_ADMIN
	Permanent Transient	11	11/Mar/2009 00:45 MMX_ADMIN 11/Mar/2009 00:45 MMX_ADMIN 11/Mar/2009 00:45 MMX_ADMIN 11/Mar/2009 00:45 MMX_ADMIN
1 2 51	Permanent Transient Permanent	11 69 51	11/Mar/2009 00:45         MMX_ADMIN           11/Mar/2009 00:45         MMX_ADMIN           11/Mar/2009 00:45         MMX_ADMIN
1 2 1 2 2	Permanent Transient Permanent Abort	11 69 51 52 53	11/Mar/2009 00:45         MMX_ADMIN
1 2 1 2 2	Permanent Transient Permanent Abort	11 69 51 52	11/Mar/2009 00:45         MMX_ADMIN
1 2 31 32 33	Permanent Transient Permanent Abort Transient	11 69 51 52 53 Error Map	11/Mar/2009 00:45         MMX_ADMIN
1 2 3 2 3 3 5MPP Command 5	Permanent Transient Permanent Abort Transient	11 69 51 52 Error Map Error Type	11/Mar/2009 00:45         MMX_ADMIN           11/Mar/2009 00:45         MMX_ADMIN
1 2 51 52	Permanent Transient Permanent Abort Transient	11 69 51 52 53 Error Map	11/Mar/2009 00:45         MMX_ADMIN
1 2 31 32 33 SMPP Command S	Permanent Transient Permanent Abort Transient Acs Release Cause 11	11 69 51 52 Error Map Error Type Permanent	11/Mar/2009 00:45         MMX_ADMIN           11/Mar/2009 00:45         MMX_ADMIN
1 2 31 32 33 5MPP Command 5 1 5	Permanent Transient Permanent Abort Transient KacS Release Cause 11 12	11 69 51 52 Error Map Error Type Permanent Transient	11/Mar/2009 00:45         MMX_ADMIN

#### SMPP fields

This table describes the content of each column.

Field	Description
SMPP Command	The status code to map against the ACS release cause.
Status	Note: Must be a unique release code for this protocol.
ACS Release	The release cause number used by Messaging Manager to pass back to ACS.
Cause	Note: This is defined on the Global tab (on page 141).
Error Type	The type of error the ACS release cause number represents.
	Note: This is defined on the Global tab (on page 141).

## EMI

#### Introduction

The EMI tab defines, for this protocol, the:

- Error codes returned to the caller for each ACS release cause
- ACS release cause for each error code

#### EMI tab

Here is an example EMI tab.

🕌 SU - Action a	and Error Codes			
<u>N</u> ew <u>E</u> d	dit <u>D</u> elete	<u>R</u> efresh	Close	
lf it cannot be c	letermined by the	e rules below, EM	i Error Code is se	ət to 4.
		Release	Cause Mappings	New Edit Delete
Context	ACS Release	Error Type	EMI Error Code	Last Updated By
General	22		2	11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN
General	24	Transient	4	11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN
General	21	Transient	1	11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN
				~
L			Error Mappings	New Edit Delete
Context	EMI Error Code	ACS Release	Error Type	Last Updated By
General	4	24	Transient	11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN
General	1	21	Transient	11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN
General	2	22	Permanent	11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN
				<b>▼</b>
Release Cause M	apping for 2 (ID S	588) was last upd	ated by MMX_AD	MIN on 11/Mar/2009 at 00:45:39 usin

#### **EMI** fields

This table describes the content of each column.

Field	Description
Context	The circumstances in which this mapping will be applied.
EMI Error Code	The error code to map against the ACS release cause.
	Note: Must be a unique release code for this protocol.
ACS Release	The release cause number used by Messaging Manager to pass back to ACS.
Cause	Note: This is defined on the Global tab (on page 141).
Error Type	The type of error the ACS release cause number represents.
	Note: This is defined on the Global tab (on page 141).

## MAP

#### Introduction

The MAP tab defines, for this protocol, the:

- Error codes returned to the caller for each ACS release cause
- ACS release cause for each error code

#### MAP tab

#### Here is an example MAP tab.

SU - Action	and Error Code	S		
<u>N</u> ew	Edit Delete	e <u>R</u> efresh	Close	Help
	M	AP		
If it cannot be	determined by th	ie rules below, GS	M Error Code is a	derived from the type of error indicated
Trai	nsient failure: de	efaultTransientFai.	lureErrorCode	
Anu	thing else: de	efaultPermanentFi	alluraErrarCada	
Any	uning else. De	eraantrennanentre	anarezhorcode	
		Release	Cause Mappings	New Edit Delete
ACS Release	Error Type	GSM Error Code	CauseCode/A	Last Updated By
24	The second second	31		la la locos col la
51	Transient	31		11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN
	Transient	32	4	11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN
34			4 6	11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN 11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN
34 36	Transient	32		11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN
34 36 39	Transient Permanent	32 32		11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN 11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN
31 34 36 39 51 50	Transient Permanent Transient	32 32 34		11/Mar/2009 00         MMX_ADMIN           11/Mar/2009 00         MMX_ADMIN           11/Mar/2009 00         MMX_ADMIN
34 36 39 51	Transient Permanent Transient Permanent	32 32 34 51		11/Mar/2009 00         MMX_ADMIN           11/Mar/2009 00         MMX_ADMIN           11/Mar/2009 00         MMX_ADMIN           11/Mar/2009 00         MMX_ADMIN
34 36 39 51	Transient Permanent Transient Permanent	32 32 34 51	6	11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN 11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN 11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN 11/Mar/2009 00 MMX_ADMIN
34 36 39 51	Transient Permanent Transient Permanent	32 32 34 51	6 Error Mappings	11/Mar/2009 00         MMX_ADMIN           Max_ADMIN            Max_ADMIN            Max_ADMIN            Max_ADMIN
34 36 39 51 50 GSM Error Code 5	Transient Permanent Transient Permanent	32 32 34 51 CO AC5 Release	6 Error Mappings ( Error Type	11/Mar/2009 00         MMX_ADMIN           11/Mar/2009 00         MMX_DUN           12/Mar/2009 00         <
34 36 39 51 50 GSM Error Code	Transient Permanent Transient Permanent	32 32 34 51 50 ACS Release 93	6 Error Mappings Error Type Transient	11/Mar/2009 00         MMX_ADMIN
34 36 39 51 51 65M Error Code 5 31 32	Transient Permanent Transient Permanent CauseCode/A	32 32 34 51 50 AC5 Release 93 31	6 Error Mappings Error Type Transient Transient	11/Mar/2009 00         MMX_ADMIN
34 36 39 51 51 65M Error Code 5	Transient Permanent Transient Permanent CauseCode/A 4	32 32 34 51 50 ACS Release 93 31 34	6 Error Mappings Error Type Transient Transient Transient	11/Mar/2009 00         MMX_ADMIN

#### **MAP** fields

This table describes the content of each column.

Field	Description
GSM Error Code	The GSM MAP error code to map against the ACS release cause.
	Note: Must be a unique release code for this protocol.
CauseCode/Acce ss Denied Reason	The cause value for an SM Delivery Failure.
ACS Release	The release cause number used by Messaging Manager to pass back to ACS.

Field	Description
Cause	Note: This is defined on the Global tab (on page 141).
Error Type	The type of error the ACS release cause number represents.
	Note: This is defined on the Global tab (on page 141).

#### Actions available

From this tab, for a release cause mapping you can:

- Adding release cause mapping MAP, IS-41 (on page 151)
- Editing release cause mapping MAP, IS-41 (on page 153)
- Deleting release cause mapping (on page 154)

For an error mapping you can:

- Adding error mapping MAP, IS-41 (on page 156)
- Editing error mapping MAP, IS-41 (on page 158)
- Deleting error mapping (on page 159)

## IS-41

#### Introduction

The IS-41 tab defines, for this protocol, the:

- Error codes returned to the caller for each ACS release cause
- ACS release cause for each error code

#### IS-41 tab

Here is an example IS-41 tab.

🔊 SU - Act					
<u>N</u> ew	<u>E</u> dit	elete [	<u>R</u> efresh	lose	<u>H</u> elp
		IS-	41		
If it cannoi	t be determined i	by the rules be	low, IS-41 SMS	3 Cause Code	is derived from the type of error .
	Permanent failui	a: dofoultBo	monontEoi/lura	CourseCode	
	r ennanent allul	e. verauitFer	manentranure	CauseCoue	
	Anything else:	defaultTra	nsientFailureC	auseCode	
			Release Cause N	Mappings Ne	w Edit Delete
Context	ACS Relea	Error Type	IS-41 SMS	Cause Value	Last Updated By
SMS	31	Transient	33		11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN
	41	Permanent	1		11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN
SMS					
SMS	43	Transient	3		11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN
	43 42	Abort	2		11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN
SMS SMS	43		-		
SMS SMS	43 42	Abort	2		11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN
SMS	43 42	Abort	2		11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN
SMS SMS	43 42	Abort	2	Mappings Ne	11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN 11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN
SMS SMS	43 42	Abort Transient	2		11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN 11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN
SMS SMS SMS	43 42 93	Abort Transient	2 38 Error M		11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN 11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN w Edit Delete
SMS SMS SMS Context	43 42 93	Abort Transient	2 38 Error M ACS Releas	Error Type	11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN         11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN         w         Edit         Delete         Last Updated
SMS SMS SMS Context SMS	43 42 93 IS-41 SM5 1	Abort Transient	2 38 Error M ACS Releas 41	Error Type Permanent	11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN           11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN           w           Edit           Delete           Last Updated           By           11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN
SMS SMS SMS Context SMS SMS	43 42 93 IS-41 SM5 1 3	Abort Transient	2 38 Error N ACS Releas 41 43	Error Type Permanent Transient	11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN           11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN           w         Edit           Last Updated         By           11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN         11/Mar/2009 MMX_ADMIN

#### **IS-41 fields**

This table describes the content of each editable column.

Field	Description
Context	The circumstances in which this mapping will be applied.
IS-41 SMS Cause Code	The cause code for an IS-41 error (SMDPP, or SMS Request) to map against the ACS Release Cause. Note: Must be a unique release code for this protocol.
Cause Value	Not used for IS-41
ACS Release Cause	The release cause number used by MM to pass back to ACS.
Error Type	The type of error this Release Cause number represents.

#### Actions available

From this tab, for a release cause mapping you can:

- Adding release cause mapping MAP, IS-41 (on page 151)
- Editing release cause mapping MAP, IS-41 (on page 153)

• Deleting release cause mapping (on page 154)

For an error mapping you can:

- Adding error mapping MAP, IS-41 (on page 156)
- Editing error mapping MAP, IS-41 (on page 158)
- Deleting error mapping (on page 159)

## SIP

#### Introduction

The SIP tab defines, for this protocol, the:

- Error codes returned to the caller for each ACS release cause
- ACS release cause for each error code

#### SIP tab

Here is an example SIP tab.

🕌 SU - Action and	Error Codes		
New Edit	. <u>D</u> elete (	Refresh Close	e <u>H</u> elp
	ermined by the rules nt failure: Status (	, ,	derived from the type of error indicated by th
Perman	ent failure: Status (	500	
		Release Cause Mapj	pings New Edit Delete
ACS Release Cause	Error Type	SIP Status	Last Updated By
51	Permanent	404	11/Mar/2009 00:45 MMX_ADMIN
52	Abort	603	11/Mar/2009 00:45 MMX_ADMIN
53	Transient	503	11/Mar/2009 00:45 MMX_ADMIN
			~
		Error Map	pings New Edit Delete
SIP Command Sta	ACS Release Cause	Error Type	Last Updated By
404	51	Permanent	11/Mar/2009 00:45 MMX_ADMIN
503	53	Transient	11/Mar/2009 00:45 MMX_ADMIN
603	52	Abort	11/Mar/2009 00:45 MMX_ADMIN
Release Cause Map;	oing for 404 (ID 598)	was last updated by	✓ MMX_ADMIN on 11/Mar/2009 at 00:45:39 u.

#### **SIP** fields

This table describes the content of each column.

Field	Description
SIP Status	The status code to map against the ACS release cause.
	Note: Must be a unique release code for this protocol.
SIP Command Status	The status code to map against the ACS release cause.
ACS Release	The release cause number used by Messaging Manager to pass back to ACS.
Cause	Note: This is defined on the Global tab (on page 141).
Error Type	The type of error the ACS release cause number represents.
	Note: This is defined on the Global tab (on page 141).

## **Release Cause Mapping**

#### Introduction

The names of the fields, except the release cause field, on the following screens, are different, depending on the protocol selected.

#### Adding release cause mapping - IP

In this example the SMPP protocol has been used. Apart from the different error code names, the add procedure is identical for the following protocols:

- SMPP
- EMI
- SIP

Follow these steps to add a release mapping to a protocol.

Step	Action
1	From the Action and Error Codes screen, click the required protocol tab to add the release mapping to.
	<b>Result:</b> The <i>Protocol</i> tab shows all the release cause and error mappings currently defined for the protocol. The top table on the tab displays the release cause mappings.
2	To the right of <b>Release Cause Mappings</b> label at the top of the release cause mappings panel, click <b>New</b> .
	Result: The New Release Cause Mapping screen opens.

o Action	
New Release Cause Mapping	X
ACS Release Cause: SMPP command status: You must enter an error code. <u>Help</u> Cancel	Save

**Note:** The New Release Cause Mapping screen for the EMI protocol also has a Context field not shown in this screen shot. For more information, see *EMI fields* (on page 145).

3 If you are creating an EMI release cause mapping, enter a context into the **Context** field.

From the ACS Release Cause drop down list, select the global release cause number to map with.

**Result:** The error type and description of the release cause are displayed below the fields. For more information about how to configure what text displays here, see *Global fields* (on page 141).

ACS Release Cause:	1	~
SMPP command status:		
	Transient - Network resource shortage	

5

4

Enter the protocol error code to map to in the bottom field. The name of the field varies according to the protocol:

Protocol	Field name	More information
SMPP	SMPP command status	See SMPP fields (on page 144).
EMI	EMI error code	See EMI fields (on page 145).
SIP	SIP Status	See SIP fields (on page 150).

Note: Must be a unique release code for this protocol.

6 Click **Save** to save the new release cause mapping record in the configuration database.

#### Adding release cause mapping - MAP, IS-41

In this example the MAP protocol has been used. Apart from the different error code names, the add procedure is identical for the following protocols:

- MAP
- IS-41

Follow these steps to add a release mapping to a protocol.

Step	Action
1	From the Action and Error Codes screen, click the required protocol tab to add the release mapping to.
	Chapter 7 Massaging Manager Action and Error Cades

Step	Action					
				ase cause and erro		
ACS Release	C Error Type	GSM Error Code	CauseCode/Ac	Last Updated By		-
1		34		04/Jan/2008 03: MMX	ADMIN	
2	Transient	34		04/Jan/2008 03: MMX_	ADMIN 🧮	
3	Transient	34		04/Jan/2008 03: MMX_	ADMIN 🔽	
		Rela	ease Cause Mapping:	s New Edit	Delete	
2	To the right of R	elease Cause N	<b>lappings</b> , click	New.		
	Result: The New	/ Release Ca	use Mapping	screen opens.		
	New Release Cau	se Mapping				
	ACS Release Cau	se:				~
	GSM error code:					
	CauseCode/Acce	ssDeniedReason				-
	,	[				
		,	You must enter an e	error code		
				Help	Cancel Sav	/e
3	Select the globa down list.	Il release cau	se number to	map with from the	e ACS Release (	Cause drop
	Result: The erro Refer to Global			e release cause a	re displayed b	elow the fields.
	ACS Release Cause:		<b>, c</b> , .		*	
	GSM error code:					
	CauseCode/AccessDer	niedReason				
		Tran	sient - Network fa	llure		
4	Enter the protoc		s to map to in	the bottom fields.	The names of	of the fields vary

- MAP see MAP fields (on page 146).
- IS-41 see IS-41 fields (on page 148).

**Note:** Must be a unique release code for this protocol.

5 Click **Save** to save the cause mapping record in the configuration database.

#### Editing release cause mapping - IP

In this example the EMI protocol has been used. Apart from the different error code names, the edit procedure is identical for the following protocols:

- SMPP
- EMI
- SIP

Follow these steps to edit a release mapping for a protocol.

Step	Action
1	From the Action and Error Codes screen, click the required protocol tab to edit the release mapping for.
	<b>Result:</b> The <i>Protocol</i> tab shows all the release cause and error mappings currently defined for the protocol. The top table on the tab displays the release cause mappings.
2	In the Release Cause Mappings table on the tab, select the record to edit.
3	To the right of <b>Release Cause Mappings</b> label at the top of the release cause mappings panel, click <b>Edit</b> .

Result: The Edit Release Cause Mapping screen opens.

Edit Release Cause M	lapping	×
ACS Release Cause:	22	
EMI error code:	2	
	Permanent - Syntax error	
	Help Cancel Save	)

4 Change the text in the field, if required. The name of the field varies according to the protocol:

- SMPP SMPP command status. See SMPP fields (on page 144).
- EMI EMI error code. See EMI fields (on page 145).
- SIP SIP Status. See SIP fields (on page 150).

5 Click **Save** to save the cause mapping record in the configuration database.

#### Editing release cause mapping - MAP, IS-41

In this example the MAP protocol has been used. Apart from the different error code names, the edit procedure is identical for the following protocols:

- MAP
- IS-41

Follow these steps to edit a release mapping for a protocol.

Step	Action
1	From the <b>Action and Error Codes</b> screen, click the required <protocol> tab to edit the release mapping for.</protocol>
	<b>Result:</b> The <i>Protocol</i> tab shows all the release cause and error mappings currently defined for the protocol. The top table on the tab displays the release cause mappings.

Step A	ction					
ACS Release C	Error Type	GSM Error Code	CauseCode/Ac	Last Updated	Ву	
1	Transient	34		04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	~
2	Transient	34		04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	
3	Transient	34		04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	~
		Rele	ase Cause Mappings	New E	dit Delete	

- 2 In the Release Cause Mappings table on the tab, select the record to edit.
- 3 To the right of Release Cause Mappings, click Edit.

Result: The Edit Release Cause Mapping screen opens.

Edit Release Cause Mapping		×
ACS Release Cause:	34	
GSM error code:	32	]
CauseCode/AccessDeniedReason	4	]
	Transient - SC-Congestion	
	Help Cancel Save	

4

- Change the text in the fields, if required. The names of the fields vary according to the protocol:
  - MAP see *MAP fields* (on page 146).
  - IS-41 see *IS-41 fields* (on page 148).
- 5 Click **Save** to save the cause mapping record in the configuration database.

#### **Deleting release cause mapping**

In this example the EMI protocol has been used. The delete release mapping procedure is identical for all protocols.

Follow these steps to delete a release mapping from a protocol.

Step	Action
1	From the Action and Error Codes screen, click the required protocol tab to delete the release cause mapping from.

**Result:** The *Protocol* tab shows all the release cause and error code mappings currently defined for the protocol. The top table on the tab displays the release cause mappings.

Context	ACS Release C	Error Type	EMI Error Code	Last Updated	Ву	
General	38	Transient	4	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	^
General	65	Permanent	4	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	
General	37	Permanent	3	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	1
General	64	Transient	3	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	
Conoral	36	Dermanent	23	04/1ap/2008-03	MMY ADMIN	
		R	elease Cause Mapping	s New E	dit Delete	

2 In the Release Cause Mappings table on the tab, select the record to delete.

Step	Action
3	To the right of Release Cause Mappings, click Delete.
	Result: The Delete Release Cause Mapping 'Cause_Number' screen opens.
4	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.
	Note: This does not delete the error code, just the release mapping.

## **Error Mapping**

#### Introduction

The names of the fields, except the release cause field, on the following screens, are different, depending on the protocol selected.

#### Adding error mapping - IP

In this example the EMI protocol has been used. Apart from the different error code names, the add procedure is identical for the following protocols:

- SMPP
- EMI
- SIP

Follow these steps to add an error mapping to a protocol.

#### Step Action

1 From the Action and Error Codes screen, click the required protocol tab to add the release mapping to.

**Result:** The *Protocol* tab shows all the release cause and error mappings currently defined for the protocol. The bottom table on the tab displays the error mappings

Context	EMI Error Code	ACS Release C	Error Type	Last Updated	Ву	
General	37	125	Transient	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	~
General	14	78	Permanent	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	۲
General	36	125	Transient	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	1
General	13	77	Permanent	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	
General	35	125	Transient	04/1ap/2008-03/	MMY ADMIN	$\mathbf{\Sigma}$

2 To the right of Error Mappings, click New.

Result: The New Error Mapping screen opens.

Step	Action					
	New Error A	<b>Aapping</b>				
	EMI error	code:				
	ACS Relea	se Cause:	×			
		You must select a Releas	e Cause.			
			Help Cancel Save			
3			to in the top field. The name of the	e field varies		
		o the protocol:		1		
	Protocol	Field name	More information	1		
	SMPP	SMPP command status	See SMPP fields (on page 144).			
	EMI	EMI error code	See EMI fields (on page 145).	1		
	SIP	SIP Status	See SIP fields (on page 150).			
	Note: Must	be a unique release code	for this protocol.			
4	Select the global release cause to map with from the ACS Release Cause drop down list.					
	<b>Result:</b> The error type and description of the release cause are displayed below the fields.					
		obal fields (on page 141).				
	ACS Release Ca	ause: 3	<b>⊻</b>			
		Transient - Network failure	a			
5	Click Save	to save the new release r	napping record in the configuration	i database.		

#### Adding error mapping - MAP, IS-41

In this example the MAP protocol has been used. Apart from the different error code names, the add procedure is identical for the following protocols:

- MAP
- IS-41

1

Follow these steps to add an error mapping to a protocol.

#### Step Action

From the Action and Error Codes screen, click the required protocol tab to add the release mapping to.

**Result:** The *Protocol* tab shows all the release cause and error mappings currently defined for the protocol. The bottom table on the tab displays the error mappings.

GSM Error Code	CauseCode/Ac	ACS Release C	Error Type	Last Updated	Ву		
1		92	Permanent	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	~	
5		91	Permanent	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN		
6	1	95	Transient	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	~	
Error Mappings New Edit Delete							
2 To the right of <b>Error Mappings</b> , click <b>New</b> .							

Step	Action
	Result: The New Error Mapping screen opens.
	New Error Mapping
	GSM error code: CauseCode/AccessDeniedReason ACS Release Cause:
3	Enter the protocol error codes to map to in the top two fields. The names of the fields

Enter the protocol error codes to map to in the top two fields. The names of the fields vary according to the protocol:

- MAP see *MAP fields* (on page 146).
- IS-41 see IS-41 fields (on page 148).

Note: Must be a unique release code for this protocol.

Select the global release cause to map to from the ACS Release Cause drop down list.

**Result:** The error type and description of the release cause are displayed below the field. Refer to *Global fields* (on page 141).

ACS Release Cause:	3	~
	Transient - Network failure	

5 Click **Save** to save the error mapping record in the configuration database.

#### Editing error mapping - IP

In this example the EMI protocol has been used. Apart from the different error code names, the edit procedure is identical for the following protocols:

- SMPP
- EMI

4

SIP

Follow these steps to edit a release mapping for a protocol.

Step	Action
1	From the <b>Action and Error Codes</b> screen, click the required <protocol> tab to edit the release mapping for.</protocol>
	<b>Result:</b> The <i>Protocol</i> tab shows all the release cause and error mappings currently defined for the protocol. The bottom table on the tab displays the error mappings

Step	Action				
Context	EMI Error Code	ACS Release C	Error Type	Last Updated	Ву
General	37	125	Transient	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN
General	14	78	Permanent	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN 🤤
General	36	125	Transient	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN
General	13	77	Permanent	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN
Conoral	35	125	Trancient	04/12008-03	MMY ADMIN

2 In the Error Mappings table on the tab, select the record to edit.

3 To the right of **Error Mappings**, click **Edit**.

Result: The Edit Error Mapping screen opens.

Edit Error Mapping	
EMI error code:	2
ACS Release Cause:	22
	Permanent - Syntax error
	<u>H</u> elp Cancel <u>S</u> ave

Note: The name of the field varies according to the protocol:

Protocol	Field name	More information
SMPP	SMPP command status	See SMPP fields (on page 144).
EMI	EMI error code	See EMI fields (on page 145).
SIP	SIP Status	See SIP fields (on page 150).

- 4 Change the ACS Release Cause, if required.
- 5 Click **Save** to save the error mapping record in the configuration database.

#### Editing error mapping - MAP, IS-41

In this example the MAP protocol has been used. Apart from the different error code names, the edit procedure is identical for the following protocols:

- MAP
- IS-41

Follow these steps to edit a release mapping for a protocol.

# Step Action 1 From the Action and Error Codes screen, click the required <protocol> tab to edit the release mapping for. Result: The Protocol tab shows all the release cause and error mappings currently defined for the protocol. The bottom table on the tab displays the error mappings

Step A	ction					
GSM Error Code	CauseCode/Ac	ACS Release C	Error Type	Last Updated	Ву	
1		92	Permanent	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	~
5		91	Permanent	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	
6	1	95	Transient	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	~
			Error Mappings	New E	dit Delete	

2 In the Error Mappings table on the tab, select the record to edit.

3	To the right of Error Mappings, click Edit.
	Result: The Edit Error Mapping screen opens.

Edit Error Mapping		×
GSM error code:	32	
CauseCode/AccessDeniedReason	4	
ACS Release Cause:	34	
	Transient - SC-Congestion	
	Help Cancel Save	

Note: The names of the top two fields vary according to the protocol:

- MAP see MAP fields (on page 146).
- IS-41 see IS-41 fields (on page 148).
- 4 Change the ACS Release Cause, if required.
- 5 Click **Save** to save the error mapping record in the configuration database.

#### **Deleting error mapping**

In this example the EMI protocol has been used. The delete error mapping procedure is identical for all protocols.

Follow these steps to delete an error mapping from a protocol.

	•			•		
Step	Action					
1	From the <b>Action and Error Codes</b> screen, click the required protocol tab to delete the releas cause mapping from.					
				elease cause and ble on the tab dis		e mappings curren rror mappings
Context	EMI Error Code	ACS Release C	Error Type	Last Updated	Ву	
General	37	125	Transient	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	~
General	14	78	Permanent	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	ē
General	36	125	Transient	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	
General	13	77	Permanent	04/Jan/2008 03:	MMX_ADMIN	
General	35	125	Transient	04/126/2008-03	MMY ADMIN	
				04/120/2008.03		• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
2	In the Error M	lappings table o	on the tab, s	select the record	to delete.	

#### Chapter 7

Step	Action
3	To the right of Error Mappings, click Delete.
	Result: The Delete Error Mapping 'Cause_Number' screen opens.\
4	Click <b>Delete</b> to delete the record from the configuration database.
	Note: This does not delete the error code, just the error mapping.

Chapter 8

## **Messaging Manager Routing Scheme Edit Control**

## **Overview**

#### Introduction

This chapter explains how to manage routing scheme components.

#### In this chapter

This chapter contains the following topics. 

## **Routing Scheme Edit Control**

#### Introduction

This tab controls which routing components can be configured using the Messaging Manager GUI.

#### Accessing Routing Scheme Edit Control

Follow these steps to open the Messaging Manager Routing Scheme Edit Control screen.



- Select Messaging Manager.
- 3 Select Routing Scheme Edit Control.

Result: You see the Messaging Manager Routing Scheme Edit Control screen.

For more information about:

- The screen's content and how to enter configuration information, see the other topics in this chapter.
- How all the information works together to create the Messaging Manager configuration, see *Configuration Scenarios* (on page 165).
- Logging into the Service Management System screen, see SMS User's Guide.

#### **Routing Scheme Edit Control tab**

Here is an example Routing Scheme Edit Control tab.

Routing Schem	e Edit Control		
Un	licensed componen	ble/disable edit access to selected parts of the Routing Scheme. Its can be disabled to prevent edit access and improve configuration ontrol licensing: all licenses are controlled separately by node con	
Group	Component	Used For These Functions	Enabled
Adapters	API	Define adapters for service control applications	
	CDMA	Define IS41/CDMA adapters for SS7 connections	
	EMI	Define UCP/EMI adapters for IP connections	
	MAP	Define MAP adapters for SS7 connections	
	SIP	Define adapters for SIP connections	
	SMPP	Define SMPP adapters for IP connections	
	TDMA	Define IS41/TDMA adapters for SS7 connections	
Gateways	MO SMS	Receive MO SMS from the network	
	MT SMS	Receive MT SMS from the network	
	VAS SMS	Send/Receive SMS from IP connections	
Options	SAS	Allow SMS Anti-spam Screening controls	<b>V</b>
	EDR	Allow Express Delivery Routing and retries	
	MCP	Allow triggering to Message Control Pack	<b>V</b>

#### Columns

This table describes the contents of each column of the Routing Scheme Edit Control tab.

Column	Description
Group	Identifies which component group the other columns relate to.
Component	Identifies the component within the group.
Used for these Functions	Describes which functions use this component.
Enabled	Indicates if the component is available for configuration (selected check box).

### Editing scheme controls

Follow these steps to edit the scheme controls.

Step	Action
1	Open the Messaging Manager Routing Scheme Edit Control screen.
2	<ul> <li>Go through the listed components and perform one of the following actions:</li> <li>Select the Enabled check box to allow use of the component</li> <li>Deselect the Enabled check box to bar the use of the component</li> </ul>
3	Click <b>Apply</b> to save the flag information to the database. <b>Result:</b> SMS will perform Messaging Manager configuration replication for all the selected nodes.

Chapter 9

# **Configuration Scenarios**

## Overview

#### Introduction

This chapter explains how Messaging Manager configuration is completed through the use of several scenarios.

#### In this chapter

This chapter contains the following topics.

Mobile to SMSC Messaging	
Application to Mobile Messaging	
Mobile to Application Messaging	
Mobile to Mobile triggering to ACS	
Instant Messaging	
Email	

## Mobile to SMSC Messaging

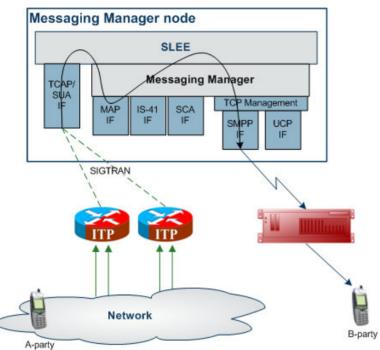
#### Description

The Mobile to SMSC messaging (MO SMS) service allows subscribers to send short messages from their mobile phone to the SMSC, for delivery to another mobile phone.

This example covers creating a routing scheme to route messages to an SMSC through IP. Each set of steps for this example follow in the order presented.

#### **MO SMS diagram**

Using only the Messaging Manager base module, MM can be configured to provide an MO SMS service. In this example we will receive mobile originating MAP messages and deliver to the SMSC over TCP/IP using the SMPP protocol. The following diagram shows the modules required.



#### **Process overview**

This table lists the procedures that you need to follow to complete this scenario.

Step	Action
1	Create MAP adapter (on page 166)
2	Create routing scheme (on page 167)
3	Create message center (on page 168)
4	Create SMPP adapter (on page 168)
5	Create SMSC path (on page 169)
6	Create SMSC connection (on page 170)
7	Create domain (on page 172)
8	Create submit routing rule (using MAP domain out to SMSC path)

#### **Create MAP adapter**

The adapter name in the GUI *must* match exactly the *adapterName* parameter in the eserv.config for the MAP protocol.

For this example we assume the **eserv.config** has the following:

```
# Adapter definitions
adapters = [
    # First adapter (MAP)
    {
        # adapter identifier.
        #
```

```
adapterName = "MAP1"
.
.
```

}

Follow these steps to configure a MAP adapter, which will be used for receiving inbound SMSs.

Step	Action
1	Configure the MAP adapter in the MM <b>eserv.config</b> file. For more information, see <i>MM Technical Guide</i> .
2	On the Configuration screen, Adapters tab, click New.
	Result: The New Adapter screen opens.
3	In the Name field, enter MAP1.
4	In the Protocol field, select MAP.
	Result: The screen should look like this:

Help Cancel Save	]
	Help Cancel Save

5

Click Save to save the new adapter record in the configuration database.

#### **Create Routing Scheme**

Follow these steps to create a new routing scheme.

Step	Action
1	On the Configuration screen, Schemes tab, click New.
	Result: The New Scheme screen opens.
2	In the Name field, enter Mobile2SMSC
	Result: The Save button becomes available.
3	Ensure the Default network field is set to Default.
4	In the Description field, enter a description for this scheme.
	<b>Example:</b> Scheme for Mobile to SMSC messaging.
5	Ensure the Also create default domain check box is selected.
	Result: The screen should now look like this:

Step	Action		
	New Scheme		]
	Name:	Mobile2SMSC	
	Default network:	Default 💌	
	Description:	Scheme for Mobile to SMSC messaging	
		☑ Also create default domain	
		Help Cancel Save	

6

Click **Save** to save the new scheme record in the configuration database.

**Result:** Messaging Manager automatically generates an MC (to/from an SMSC) and an SME (to from an MSC/HLR) path for the MAP1 adapter created in step 1.

#### **Create Message Center**

Follow these steps to create a Message Center.

Step	Action
1	On the Configuration screen, Message Centres tab, click New.
	Result: The New Message Centre screen opens.
2	In the Message Centre Name field, enter Message Centre 1
3	In the <b>Service centre address</b> field you would normally enter the global title of the service center to be used. For IP service centers, this is not used, but something has to be entered.
	Result: The Save button will appear.

New Message Centre	
Message centre name:	Message Centre 1
Service centre address:	1
	<u>H</u> elp Cancel <u>S</u> ave

4

Click **Save** to save the new record to the database.

#### **Create SMPP adapter**

The adapter name in the GUI *must* match exactly the <code>adapterName</code> parameter in the eserv.config for the SMPP protocol.

For this example we assume the eserv.config has the following:

#	Adapter	definitions
---	---------	-------------

```
adapters = [
    # Third adapter (SMPP)
    {
        # adapter identifier.
        #
        adapterName = "SMPP1"
        .
        .
    }
}
```

Follow these steps to configure an SMPP adapter, which will be used for submitting SMSs to the SMSC.

Step	Action
1	On the Configuration screen, Adapters tab, click New.
	Result: The New Adapter screen opens.

- 2 In the Name field, enter SMPP1
- 3 In the Protocol field, select SMPP.

Result: The screen should look like this.

New Adapte	r (	×
Name:	SMPP1	
Protocol:	EMI INTERNAL INTERNAL_IP IS41_CDMA IS41_TDMA MAP SIP SMPP	
	Help Cancel Save	)

4

Click **Save** to save the new adapter in the configuration database.

#### Create SMSC path

Configure one or more outbound paths to the SMSC over the SMPP protocol.

Follow these steps to add the required paths.

Step	Action
1	In the grid on the Configuration screen, Schemes tab, click on the Mobile2SMSC scheme to add the outbound paths to and click <b>Open</b> .
	Result: The Messaging Manager Scheme 'Mobile2SMSC' screen opens.
2	Select the Paths tab and click New.
	Result: The New Path screen opens.
3	In the Name field, type Mobile2SMSC SMPP SMSC
4	From the Adapter drop down list, select SMPP1.
	Result: The Save button becomes available.

Step	Action				
5		<b>ype</b> drop down list, sel should now look like tl			
	New Path				
	This routing scheme	) is currently deployed on 2 (	3CPs		
	Name:	Mobile2SMSC SMPP SMSC			
	Adapter:	SMPP1	~		
	Endpoint type:	МС	~		
	Default routing path:		►		
	Message centre;		~		
	Statistics category:				
	Max messages/sec:				
		✓ This is a trusted path			
		Help Cancel S	ave		

**Note:** Where the message is being sent using SMPP to an SMSC, we select MC as the endpoint. Where the message is being sent to an ASP, we select SME as the endpoint.

- 6 Click **Save** to save the new Path to the configuration database.
- 7 Repeat steps 3 to 8, adding the Mobile2SMSC SMPP ASP path with and Endpoint of SME.

#### **Create SMSC connection**

Follow these steps to add a connection to the outbound path.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Paths tab, select the Mobile2SMSC SMPP SMSC path.
2	Click Add Connection.
	Result: The New SMPP Connection panel opens.
3	In the Name field, enter Mobile2SMSC SMSC Connection 1.
4	In the Weighting field, enter 10
5	Select the <b>Preopen</b> , <b>RX</b> and <b>TX</b> check boxes to allow the receiving and sending of transmissions.
6	In the Remote username field, enter msgout
7	In the Remote password field, enter msgout
8	In the Remote listen field, enter 205.100.97.53
9	In the Remote Listen Port field, enter 5000.
	Result: The screen should now look like this.

Step	Action					
	New SMPP Connectio	n				
		This routing s	cheme is currer	ntly deployed on 2 SC	Ps	
	Name:	Mobile2SMSC :	SMSC Connection	1		
	Weighting:	10	]			
	🕑 Preopen 🕑 R)	к 🔽 тх		IP address / host name	ę	Port
	Local username:		Local listen:	NIC_A	*	
	Local password:		Local source:	NIC_A	*	
	Remote username:	msgout	Remote listen:	205.100.97.53		5000
	Remote password:	msgout	Remote source:			
	Connections allowed:	1				
	SMPP Options					
	SMPP version:	3.4	Max. co	ncurrent transactions;	1024	
			Outgoin	g timeout:	10	
	System ID:	eSG_MMX	Idle time	out:	0	
	System type:	MMX	Heartbe	at interval:	0	
	Correlation ID:					
				<u>H</u> elp	Cancel	<u>S</u> ave

- 10 Click **Save** to save the new connection to the configuration database.
- 11 In the table on the Paths tab, select Mobile2SMSC SMPP ASP path and click New Connection.
- 12 In the Name field, enter Mobile2SMSC ASP Connection 1.
- 13 In the Weighting field, enter 10.
- 14 Select the **RX** and **TX** check boxes.
- 15 In the Local Username and Local Password fields, enter lclout.
- 16 In the Remote Username and Remote Password fields, enter msgout.
- 17 In the Remote Listen field, enter 205.100.97.53.
- 18 In the Port field, enter 5000.
  - Result: The screen should look like this:

Action					
New SMPP Connectio	n				D
	This routing s	cheme is currer	ntly deployed on 2 SC	Ps	
Name:	Mobile2SMSC .	ASP Connection 1			
Weighting:	10	]			
📃 Preopen 🛛 R	х 🔽 тх		IP address / host name		Port
Local username:	lcout	Local listen:	NIC_A	*	
Local password:	lcout	Local source:	NIC_A	*	
Remote username:	msgout	Remote listen:	205.100.97.53		5000
Remote password:	msgout	Remote source:			
Connections allowed:	1				
SMPP Options					
SMPP version:	3.4	Max. co	ncurrent transactions:	1024	
		Outgoin	g timeout:	10	
System ID:	eSG_MMX	Idle time	out:	0	
System type:	MMX	Heartbe	at interval:	0	
Correlation ID:					
				Cancel	<u>S</u> ave



Click **Save** to save the new connection to the configuration database.

#### **Create domain**

Identify the domains that are wanted to route to the SMSC through IP.

Follow these steps to add routing address prefixes:

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Configuration screen, Schemes tab, click on the Mobile2SMSC routing scheme and click <b>Open</b> .
	Result: The Messaging Manager Scheme 'Mobile2SMSC' screen opens.
2	Select the Domains tab and click New.
3	In the Name field, enter MAP Inbound.
	Result: The screen should now look like this:

Step	Action
	New Domain
	This routing scheme is currently deployed on 2 SCPs
	Name: MAP Inbound
	Help Cancel Save
4	Click Save.
_	Result: The Domain will be saved and be selected in the table.
5 6	Select the Screening tab and select the Originating Address Screening rule. Click Add.
7	In the Incoming path name prefix field, enter MAP Inbound.
8	In the Originating address prefix field, enter 033.
9	Select MAP Inbound from the Allocate domain drop-down list.
	Result: The screen should now look like this:
	Add Originating Screening Rule
	This routing scheme is currently deployed on 2 SCPs
	Screening selection criteria
	Incoming path name prefix: MAP Inbound
	Originating address prefix: 033
	Screening response
	Allocate domain: MAP Inbound
	O Perform action:
	Release cause:
8	In the Originating address prefix field, enter 033. Select MAP Inbound from the Allocate domain drop-down list. Result: The screen should now look like this: Add Originating Screening Rule       Image: Comparison of the second

- 10 Click Save.
- 11 Steps 7 to 11can be repeated to build up a list of routing address prefixes for this routing scheme.

# **Create Submit routing rule**

The Routing rules enable Messaging Manager to have a list of paths to attempt routing over. Messaging Manager will attempt routing using the first path, second and so on down the list. Follow these steps to establish a list of paths.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Configuration screen, Schemes tab, click on the Mobile2SMSC scheme and click <b>Open</b> .
	Result: The Messaging Manager Scheme 'Mobile2SMSC' screen opens.
2	Select the Routing tab and click New.
3	In the Routing Class drop down list, select Submit.
4	In the Message centre drop down list, select Message Centre 1.
5	In the Originating domain drop down list, select MAP Inbound.
6	From the Paths sequencing drop down list, select Mobile2SMSC SMPP SMSC.
7	Click Add.
	Result: The screen should look like this.

New Routing Rule		$\times$
This routing	scheme is currently deployed on 2 SCPs	
Routing class:	Submit	
Message centre:	Message Centre 1	
Originating domain:	MAP Inbound	
Originating address prefix:		
Paths sequencing		
Mobile25MSC SMPP SMSC	×	
	Retries: 0 Interval: 0 Update	
Path	Retries Inte	
Mobile2SMSC SMPP SMSC	0 0	
	Move Up Move Down <u>R</u> emove	
	Help Cancel Save	

8

Click Save.

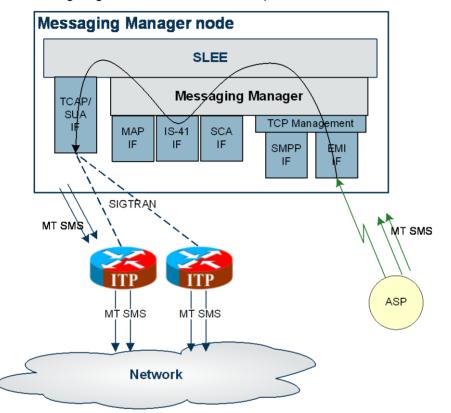
# **Application to Mobile Messaging**

# Description

Application to mobile is a simple service that provides basic delivery of SMSs to a mobile phone.

# Application to Mobile diagram

Using only the Messaging Manager Base module, MM can be configured to provide an application to mobile service. In this example we will receive EMI protocol messages from ASPs and deliver them to an SMSC over SS7 using the IS-41 protocol.



The following diagram shows the modules required:

#### **Process overview**

This table lists the procedures that you need to follow to complete this scenario.

Step	Action
1	Create EMI adapter (on page 176)
2	Create routing scheme (on page 176)
3	Create EMI SMSC path (on page 177)
4	Create EMI SMSC connection (on page 178)
5	Create EMI ASP path (on page 179)
6	Create EMI ASP connection (on page 180)
7	Create address range (on page 181)
8	Create throttling rule (on page 184)
9	Configure trigger rule (on page 184)
10	Configure routing rule (on page 185)
11	Configure (on page 186)Messaging Manager node (on page 186)

### **Create EMI Adapter**

The adapter name in the GUI *must* match exactly the <code>adapterName</code> parameter in the eserv.config for the EMI protocol.

For this example we assume the eserv.config has the following:

Follow these steps to configure an EMI adapter, which will be used for receiving inbound SMSs:

Step	Action
1	Configure the EMI Adapter in the Messaging Manager <b>eserv.config</b> file. For more information, see the <i>MM Technical Guide</i> .
2	On the Configuration screen, Adapters tab, click New
	Result: The New Adapter screen opens.
3	In the Name field, type EMI1.
4	In the Protocol field, select EMI.
	Result: The screen should look like this:

New Adapte	er.		$\mathbf{X}$
Name:	EMI1		
Protocol:	EMI INTERNAL IS41_CDMA IS41_TDMA MAP SIP SMPP		
		Help Cancel Save	

5

Click **Save** to save the new Adapter record in the configuration database.

#### **Create Routing Scheme**

Follow these steps to create a new routing scheme.

Step	Action
1	On the Configuration screen, Schemes tab, click New.
	Result: The New Scheme screen opens.
2	In the Name field, type App2Mobile
	Result: The Save button becomes available.

Step	Action		
3 4	In the <b>Description</b> Ensure the <b>Also</b> of <b>Result</b> : The scree		
	New Scheme Name: Default network: Description:	App2Mobile         Default         Scheme for Application to Mobile messaging         ✓ Also create default domain         Help       Cancel       Save	

Click **Save** to save the new Scheme record in the configuration database.

# Create EMI SMSC path

Follow these steps to create a default routing path to an SMSC via EMI:

Step	Action
1	In the grid on the Schemes tab, click on the App2Mobile scheme.
2	Click <b>Open</b> .
3	Select the Paths tab and click New.
	Result: The New Path screen opens.
4	In the Name field, type EMI SMSC
	<b>Note:</b> The Name can be generic since this path can also be used by other paths as their default routing path.
5	From the Adapter drop down list, select EMI Adapter.
	Result: the Save button becomes available.
6	From the Endpoint type field, select MC.
	Result: The screen should now look similar to this:

Action		
New Path	X	
This routing scheme	e is currently deployed on 2 SCPs	
Name:	EMI SMSC	
Adapter:	EMI1	
Endpoint type:	MC	
Default routing path:	<b>~</b>	
Message centre;	×	
Statistics category:		
Max messages/sec:		
	This is a trusted path	
	Help Cancel Save	
		1

Click **Save** to save the new Path to the configuration database.

### **Create EMI SMSC connection**

Follow these steps to create and configure an EMI SMSC connection:

Step	Action
1	In the grid on the Paths tab, click on the EMI SMSC path.
2	Click Add Connection.
	Result: The New EMI Connection screen displays.
3	In the Name field, type EMI SMSC Connection.
	Result: The Save button becomes available.
4	In the Weighting field, type 10.
5	Tick the <b>Preopen, RX</b> and <b>TX</b> check boxes to allow the receiving and sending of transmissions.
6	In the Local username and Local password fields, type local.
7	In the Port fields, type 5000.
8	The EMI Options will have default values assigned.
	These can be changed as required. For instance, select Allow Alternative Source Address and force a Session Timeout of 60 seconds.
	Result: The screen should now look similar this:

Step	Action					
	New EMI Connection					X
		This routing s	cheme is curre	ntly deployed on 2 S	CPs	
	Name:	EMI SMSC Con	Inection			
	Weighting:	1				
	🗸 Preopen 🗸 R×	ХТ 🔽		IP address / host nam	e	Port
	Local username:	local	Local listen:	NIC_A	*	5000
	Local password:	local	Local source:	NIC_A	*	5000
	Remote username:		Remote listen:			
	Remote password:		Remote source:			
	Connections allowed:	1				
	EMI Options					
	Window size:	100		Alert poll time:	-1	
	Max window queue lengt	h: 1024		Alert address:		
	Login orig, type of numb		al number 🔽	Alert protocol ID:	PC appl via a	abbrev. no. 💙
	Login orig. number plan I	D: E.164 addr	ess 🔽	Session timeout:	-1	
	Default source address:			Response timeout:	4	
	Allow alt. source address	: 🗹		Response poll time:	2	
	Provide VMSC in HPLMN:			Default protocol ID:	0	
	Allow user time zones:					
	CDR information:					
	L					
				<u>H</u>	elp Car	ncel <u>S</u> ave

Click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{Save}}$  to save the new Connection to the configuration database.

# Create EMI ASP path

Follow these steps to create and configure the inbound ASP path:

Step	Action
1	In the grid on the Schemes tab, click on the App2Mobile scheme.
2	Click Open.
3	Click the Paths tab and click New.
	Result: The New Path panel opens.
4	In the Name field, type Stock Quotes
5	From the Adapter drop down list, select EMI1
	Result: The Save button becomes available.
6	From the Endpoint type drop down list, select SME.

Step	Action				
7		t <b>ing path</b> drop down list should now look simila		II SMSC.	
	New Path				
	This routing scheme	is currently deployed on 2 S	CPs		
	Name:	Stock Quotes			
	Adapter:	EMI1	~		
	Endpoint type:	SME	~		
	Default routing path:	EMI SMSC	~		
	Message centre:	Default	~		
	Statistics category:				
	Max messages/sec:				
		✓ This is a trusted path			
		Help Cancel Sa	/e		

Click **Save** to save the new Path to the configuration database.

# **Create EMI ASP connection**

Follow these steps to create and configure an EMI connection to the ASP:

Step	Action
1	In the grid on the Paths tab, click on the Stock Quotes path.
2	Click Add Connection to add a Connection to the selected path.
	Result: The New EMI Connection screen displays.
3	In the Name field, type Stock Quote 1.
	Result: The Save button becomes available.
4	In the Weighting field, type 10.
5	Select the <b>RX</b> and <b>TX</b> check boxes to allow the receiving and sending of transmissions.
6	In the Local username and Local password fields, type stock.
7	In the Local listen port field, type 5000.
	In the Local source port field, type 1512
8	The EMI Options will have default values assigned.
	These can be changed as required. For instance, select <b>Allow alt. source address</b> and force a <b>Session timeout</b> of 60 seconds.
	Result: The screen should now look similar this:

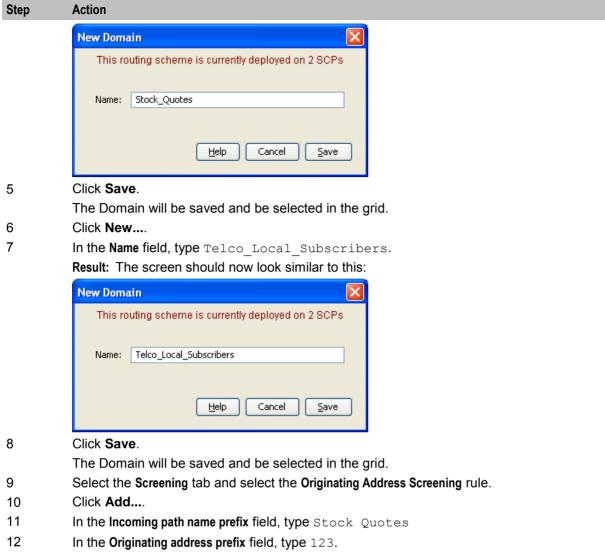
Step	Action					
	New EMI Connection					
		This routing s	cheme is curre	ntly deployed on 2 S	CPs	
	Name:	Stock Quote 1				
	Weighting:	10				
	🗌 Preopen 🕑 R>	х 🔽 ТХ		IP address / host nam	e	Port
	Local username:	stock	Local listen:	NIC_A	~	5000
	Local password:	stock	Local source:	NIC_A	*	1512
	Remote username:		Remote listen:			
	Remote password:		Remote source:			
	Connections allowed:	1				
	EMI Options					
	Window size:	100		Alert poll time:	-1	
	Max window queue lengt	h: 1024		Alert address:		
	Login orig. type of numb	er: Internation	al number 🔽	Alert protocol ID:	PC appl via a	abbrev. no. 🔽
	Login orig. number plan I	D: E.164 addr	ess 🔽	Session timeout:	60	
	Default source address:			Response timeout:	4	
	Allow alt. source address	: 🗹		Response poll time:	2	
	Provide VMSC in HPLMN:			Default protocol ID:	64	
	Allow user time zones:					
	CDR information:					
				<u>H</u>	elp Car	ncel <u>S</u> ave

Click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{Save}}$  to save the new Connection to the configuration database.

### Create address range

Identify the domains that will be used to route from the ASP (short code 123) to a mobile phone. Follow these steps to add new domains:

Step	Action
1	On the Schemes tab, select the App2Mobile routing scheme.
2	Click <b>Open</b> .
3	Select the Domains tab and click New
4	In the Name field, type Stock_Quotes.
	Result: The screen should now look similar to this:



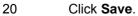
13Select Stock\_Quotes from the Allocate domain drop-down list.Result: The screen should now look like this:

Step	Action		
	Add Originating Screening R	lule	×
	This routing scheme is cu	irrently deployed on 2 SCPs	
	Screening selection criteria		
	Incoming path name prefix:	Stock Quotes	
	Originating address prefix:	123	
	Screening response		
	<ul> <li>Allocate domain:</li> </ul>	Stock_Quotes 🖌 🖌	
	O Perform action:	×	
	Release cause:	<b>`</b>	
		Help Cancel Save	
14	Click Save.		
15	Select the Destination Addre	ess Screening rule.	
16	Click Add		

- 17 In the Incoming path name prefix field, type Stock Quotes.
- 18 In the Destination address prefix field, type 056.
- 19 Select Telco\_Local\_Subscribers from the Allocate domain drop-down list.

Result: The screen should now look like this:

Add Destination Screening Ru	ıle 🛛 🔀
This routing scheme is cur	rently deployed on 2 SCPs
Screening selection criteria	
Incoming path name prefix:	Stock Quotes
Destination address prefix:	056
Screening response	
<ul> <li>Allocate domain:</li> </ul>	Telco_Local_Subscribers 🛛 🗸
Perform action:	×
Release cause;	×
Ŀ	telp Cancel Save



Step	Action
21	Steps 16 to 20 can be repeated to build up a list of address prefixes for the domain.

### **Create Throttling Rule**

Follow these steps to set the throttling values for the path. Traffic from the ASP will only be accepted if the system is running below 50% capacity:

Step	Action
1	Select the Throttling tab and click New.
2	In the Detection point field, select Submit.
3	In the Originating domain field select Stock_Quotes.
4	In the Throttle field, type 50
	Result: The screen should look like this:

New Throttling Rule	
This routing scheme is	currently deployed on 2 SCPs
Detection point:	Submit 🔽
Destination domain:	<b>~</b>
Originating domain:	Stock_Quotes
Throttle at:	50 %
Не	lp Cancel Save

5 Click Save.

# **Configure Trigger Rule**

Follow these steps to configure a trigger rule:

Step	Action
1	On the Triggering tab, click New.
2	From the Detection point drop down list, select Submit
3	From the Originating Domain drop down list, select Stock_Quotes.
4	Select the Route action from the Perform action: drop down list.
5	Select the Set routing class check box and from drop down list, select Deliver
	Result: The screen should look like this:

Step	Action
	New Trigger Rule
	This routing scheme is currently deployed on 2 SCPs
	Trigger Selection Criteria
	Detection point: Submit
	Originating Domain: Stock_Quotes
	Originating Address prefix:
	Trigger Processing
	Perform action:     Route
	Release cause:
	Set routing class: Deliver
	Trigger a call plan in ACS
	Use scheduled call plan if present
	Use this named call plan
	ACS customer:
	Call plan:
	Please press ENTER after keying customer or call plan names. This will cause the value entered to be retrieved and validated. You can search in either field by entering partial names. Note that a limit of 100 rows is returned in each list. If you cannot find the item you're looking for, please narrow your search criteria.
	Help Cancel Save

6

Click Save.

# **Configure routing rule**

The Routing rules enable Messaging Manager to have a list of paths to attempt routing over. Messaging Manager will attempt routing using the first path, second and so on down the list.

Follow these steps to establish a list of paths:

Step	Action
1	<i>Create CDMA Adapter</i> (on page 191) as in the Mobile to Application Messaging scenario if it doesn't already exist.
2	On the Routing tab, from the Routing class drop down list, select Deliver.
3	Click New

Step	Action
	<b>Result:</b> The New Routing Rule screen will open. The <b>Routing class</b> field will be populated with Deliver.
4	From the Destination domain drop down list, select Telco_Local_Subscribers.
5	From the Originating domain drop down list, select Stock_Quotes.
6	From the Paths sequencing drop down list, select IS41_CDMA_SME_CDMA Adapter.
7	Click Add.
	Results:

- The path will be added to the Paths sequencing list.
- The screen should now like similar to this:

New Routing Rule				×
This routing scheme is currently deployed on 2 SCPs				
				1
Routing class:	Deliver		¥	
Destination domain:	Telco_Local_Subscribers		*	]
Destination address prefix:				]
Originating domain:	Stock_Quotes		~	]
Originating address prefix:				]
Paths sequencing				-
IS41_CDMA_SME_IS41_C	DMA_SME_CDMA Adapter		~	
	Retries: 0	Interval: 0	Add	
Path		Retries		
IS41_CDMA_SME_IS41_CE	MA_SME_CDMA Adapter	0	0	
			. ✓	
	Move Up	Move <u>D</u> own	Remove	
Help Cancel Save				

8 Click Save.

#### **Configure Messaging Manager node**

To enable loading of a routing scheme by Messaging Manager, the scheme is associated with the node listed in the **eserv.config** file.

Follow these steps to associate the scheme just configured with the SCP01 node:

Step	Action
1	From the table on the Nodes tab, select the node, in this example, ${\tt SCPO1}$ .
2	Click Edit.
	Result: The Edit Node screen opens.

	, <b>select</b> APP2Mobile. <b>/ill look similar to this:</b>
Edit Node 'SCP01'	
Name:	SCP01
IP Address:	192.168.15.117
Redirection Port:	4377
Description:	Created from Python
Scheme:	(Unspecified) a App2Mobile AT32_rc Autotest312 Autotest32 Autotest321 Autotest322
NIC A:	192.168.15.117
NIC B:	192.168.15.117
Concatenation Group:	43
Click <b>Save</b> .	Help Cancel Save

Click Close.

Result: This example configuration is now complete.

# **Mobile to Application Messaging**

#### Description

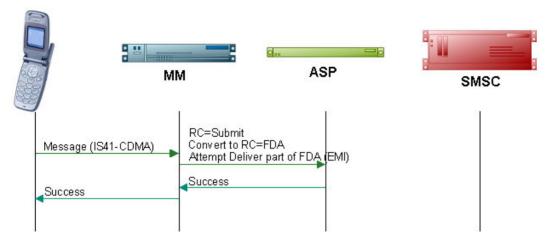
The mobile to application to service provides delivery of SMSs that originated on a mobile phone to an ASP.

Messaging Manager will attempt to deliver the SMS directly to the ASP, falling back to an SMSC if the direct delivery (FDA) fails.

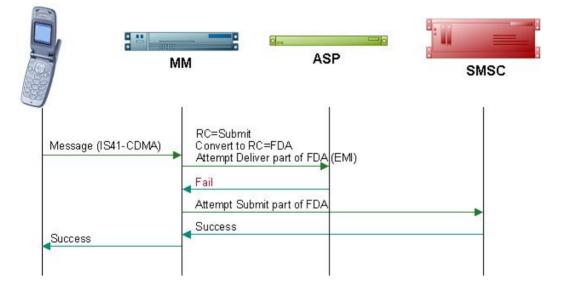
### Setting the scene

This example covers the configuration required for the following flows:

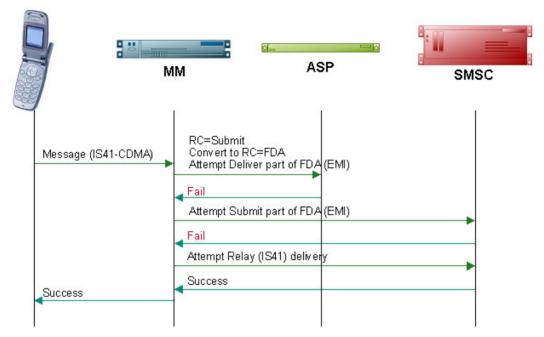
#### FDA deliver attempt success



#### FDA submit attempt success

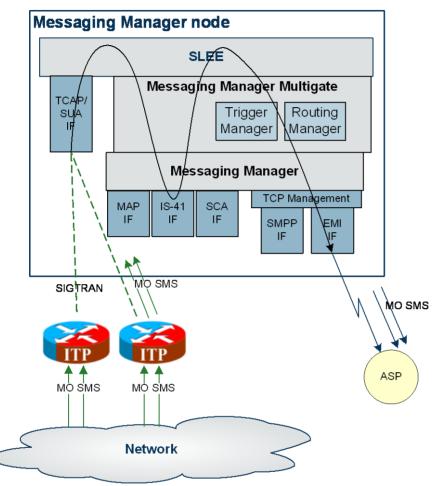


#### Default routing path attempt success



#### Mobile to Application diagram

Using the Messaging Manager Multigate and the Messaging Manager Director modules, MM can be configured to provide a Mobile to Application service. In this example we will receive mobile originating IS-41 messages and deliver them to ASPs over EMI using FDA. This diagram shows the modules required.



#### **Process overview**

This table lists the procedures that you need to follow to complete this scenario.

Step	Action
1	Create a CDMA adapter (on page 191)
2	Create routing scheme (on page 192)
3	Create SMSC path (on page 193)
4	Configure SS7 SMSC path connection (on page 193)
5	Assign default routing path to inbound CDMA path (on page 194)
6	Create outbound path (on page 195)
7	Configure outbound path EMI connection (on page 196)
8	Create EMI SMSC path (on page 197)
9	Configure inbound path EMI connection (on page 198)
10	Create originating domain (on page 200)

Step	Action
11	Configure originating domain rule (on page 201)
12	Create destination domain (on page 200)
13	Configure destination domain rule (on page 201)
14	Create throttling rule (on page 202)
15	Configure trigger rule (on page 203)
16	Configure deliver routing rule (on page 204)
17	Configure submit routing rule (on page 205)
18	Configure Messaging Manager node (on page 206)Messaging Manager

# **Create CDMA Adapter**

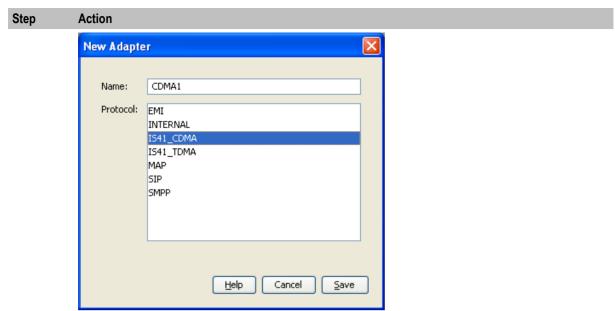
The adapter name in the GUI must match exactly the adapterName parameter in the eserv.config for the IS41 CDMA protocol.

For this example we assume the eserv.config has the following:

```
# Adapter definitions
adapters = [
    # IS-41 CDMA Adapter
    {
        # adapter identifier.
        #
        adapterName = "CDMA1"
        .
     }
}
```

Follow these steps to configure a CDMA adapter, which will be used for receiving inbound SMSs:

Step	Action
1	Configure the CDMA adapter in the Messaging Manager <b>eserv.config</b> file. For more information, see <i>MM Technical Guide</i> .
2	On the Configuration screen, Adapters tab, click New
	Result: The New Adapter screen opens.
3	In the Name field, enter CDMA1
4	From Protocol list, select IS41_CDMA.
	Result: The screen should now look like this:



Click **Save** to save the new adapter record in the configuration database.

#### **Create Routing Scheme**

Follow these steps to create a new routing scheme.

Step	Action
1	On the Configuration screen, Schemes tab, click New.
	Result: The New Scheme screen opens.
2	In the Name field, type Mobile2App.

**Result:** The Save button becomes available.

- 3 In the **Description** field, enter a description.
- 4 Ensure the Also create default domain check box is selected. Result: The screen should now look similar to this:

New Scheme		$\mathbf{X}$
Name:	Mobile2App	]
Default network:	Default	]
Description:	Scheme for Mobile to Application messaging	
	×	
	✓ Also create default domain	
	Help Cancel Save	



Click **Save** to save the new scheme record in the configuration database.

# Create SMSC path

Follow these steps to create a CDMA SMSC path.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Schemes tab, select the Mobile2App scheme to add the default routing path to.
2	Click Open.
3	Select the Paths tab and click New
	Result: The New Path screen opens.
4	In the Name field, enter CDMA SMSC
	<b>Note:</b> The Name can be generic since this path can be used many times by other schemes/ paths as their relay path.
5	From the Adapter drop down list, select CDMA1.

- 6 From the Endpoint type drop down list, select MC.
- 7 Select the **This is a trusted path** check box.

Result: The screen should now look similar to this:

New Path		×	
This routing scheme is currently deployed on 2 SCPs			
Name:	CDMA SMSC		
Adapter:	CDMA1	~	
Endpoint type:	MC	~	
Default routing path:		~	
Message centre;		~	
Statistics category:			
	This is a trusted path		
	Help Cancel Save		

8

Click **Save** to save the new path to the configuration database.

# Configure SS7 SMSC path connection

Follow these steps to add a SS7 connection to the SMSC path.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Paths tab, select the CDMA SMSC path.
2	Click Add Connection.
	Result: The New SS7 Connection screen opens.
3	In the Name field, enter SMSC Connection1
4	Select the <b>Outbound</b> check box.

Step	Action
5	In the SS7 field, enter 021
6	In the GT field, enter 071234567
	<b>Note:</b> When adding a new connection the Save button becomes available after entering either PC or GT and SS7 fields.
7	In the Weight field, type 1 (may need to deselect the Failover check box first).
	Note: With a single connection, any non-zero value equates to a maximum loading.
	Result: The screen should now look like this:

New SS7 Con	nection			
		This routing scheme is	currently deployed o	n 2 SCPs
Name:	SMSC Connection1			
🔲 Inbound			Outbound	
Remote PC:	(Any)	Match any PC	PC:	
	SCCP Calling Party point co	de (exact match)		SCCP Called Party point code. At least one of GT and PC is required.
Remote SSN:	(Any)	Match any SSN	SSN:	021
	SCCP Calling Party subsyst	em number (exact match)		SCCP Called Party subsystem number (required)
Remote GT:	(Any)	Match any GT	GT:	071234567
	SCCP Calling Party global ti	itle (prefix match)		SCCP Called Party global title
			Weight:	1 % 🔲 Failover
			Congestion threshold:	messages
			Congestion backoff:	seconds
				Help Cancel Save

Click **Save** to save the new connection to the database.

# Assign default routing path to inbound CDMA path

Follow these steps to assign a default routing path to the predefined CDMA SME path. This will be used for all inbound MO traffic that has no specific routing rule defined.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Paths tab, select the inbound path IS41_CDMA_SME_CDMA1_Adapter.
2	Click Edit.
	Result: The Edit Path 'path_name' screen appears.
3	From the Default routing path drop down list, select CDMA SMSC.
	Result: The screen will look similar to this:

Step	Action		
	Edit Path 'IS41_CDMA	_SME_CDMA1_Adapter'	×
	This routing scher	ne is currently deployed on 2 SCPs	
	Name:	IS41_CDMA_SME_CDMA1_Adapter	
	Adapter:	CDMA1	•
	Endpoint type:	SME	•
	Default routing path:	CDMA SMSC	·
	Message centre:	Default	•
	Statistics category:		
		✓ This is a trusted path	
			_
		Help Cancel Save	
4	Click Save.		

# Create outbound path

Follow these steps to create an outbound path to the EMI ASP.

Step	Action
1	Select the Paths tab and click New.
	Result: The New Path screen opens.
2	In the Name field, enter Pop Idol
3	From the Adapter drop down list, select EMI1
4	From the Endpoint type drop down list, select SME.
	Result: The screen should now look like this:

Step	Action		
	New Path		
	This routing scheme	is currently deployed on 2 SCPs	
	Name:	Pop Idol	
	Adapter:	EMI1	
	Endpoint type:	SME	
	Default routing path:	×	
	Message centre:	Default 🔽	
	Statistics category:		
	Max messages/sec:		
		This is a trusted path	
		Help Cancel Save	

**Note:** Where the message is being sent using EMI to an SMSC, we select MC as the endpoint. Where the message is being sent to an ASP, we select SME as the endpoint.

5 Click **Save** to save the new path to the configuration database.

### Configure outbound path EMI connection

Follow these steps to create and configure an EMI ASP connection.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Paths tab, select the path Pop Idol.
2	Click Add Connection.
	Result: The New EMI Connection screen opens.
3	In the Name field, enter Pop Idol connection.
	<b>Note:</b> When adding a new connection the Save button becomes available on entering the <b>Name</b> field.
4	In the Weighting field, enter 10.
5	Select the <b>Preopen</b> check box to allow the connection to open on Messaging Manager startup/ reload.
6	Select the <b>RX</b> and <b>TX</b> check boxes to allow the receiving and sending of transmissions.
7	In the Local username and Local Password fields, enter popidol
8	In the Local listen Port field, enter 5000
	In the Local source Port field, enter 1512
9	The EMI options will have default values assigned. These can be changed as required.
	Result: The screen should now look like this:

Name:	Pop Idol	Connection			
Weighting:	10				
Preopen			IP address / host nam	e	Port
Local username	e: popidol	Local listen:	NIC_A	*	5000
Local password	: popidol	Local source:	NIC_A	*	1512
Remote userna	me:	Remote listen:	:		
Remote passwo	ord:	Remote source	e:		
Window size: Max window queu Login orig. type o Login orig. numbe Default source ad Allow alt. source a	f number: Inter r plan ID: E.164 Idress:	national number 💙 ł address 👻	Alert poll time: Alert address: Alert protocol ID: Session timeout: Response timeout: Response poll time:	-1 PC appl via a -1 4 2	abbrev. no. 🕚
Provide VMSC in F Allow user time zo CDR information:	ones:		Default protocol ID:	64	

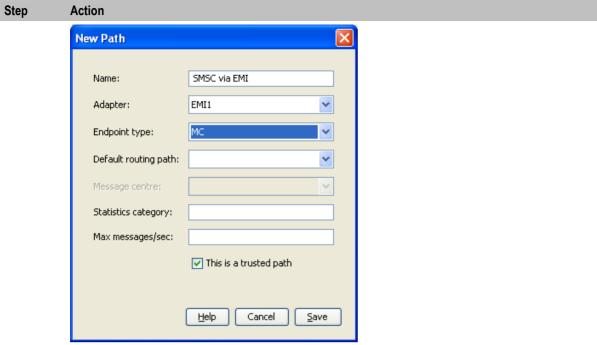
10

Click **Save** to save the new connection to the database.

# Create EMI SMSC path

Follow these steps to add an outbound path to the SMSC via EMI.

Step	Action
1	Select the Paths tab and click New.
	Result: The New Path screen opens.
2	In the Name field, enter SMSC via EMI.
3	From the Adapter drop down list, select EMI1.
4	From the Endpoint type drop down list, select MC.
	Result: The screen should now look like this:



Click **Save** to save the new path to the configuration database.

### Configure inbound path EMI connection

Follow these steps to create and configure an EMI connection.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Paths tab, select the path SMSC via EMI.
2	Click Add Connection.
	Result: The New EMI Connection screen opens.
3	In the Name field, enter SMSC via EMI connection
	Result: The Save button becomes available.
4	In the Weighting field, enter 10
5	Select the <b>Preopen</b> check box to allow the connection to open on Messaging Manager startup/ reload.
6	Select the RX and TX check boxes to allow the receiving and sending of transmissions.
7	In the Remote username and Remote password fields, enter smsc
8	In the Remote listen field, enter 200.10.20.1
9	In the Remote listen Port field, enter 5000
10	The EMI options will have default values assigned. These can be changed as required.
	Result: The screen should look similar this:

Name:	SMSC via EMI	connection			
Weighting:	10				
🔽 Preopen 🔽 R	х 🔽 тх		IP address / host nam	e	Port
Local username:		Local listen:	NIC_A	*	
Local password:		Local source:	NIC_A	*	
Remote username:	smsc	Remote listen:	200.10.20.1		5000
Remote password:	smsc	Remote source:			
Connections allowed:	1				
EMI Options					
	100				
Window size:	100		Alert poll time:	-1	
Window size: Max window queue leng			Alert poll time: Alert address:	-1	
	th: 1024	nal number 💌			abbrev. no. 💊
Max window queue leng	th: 1024 er: Internatio		Alert address:		abbrev. no. 🔦
Max window queue leng Login orig, type of numb	th: 1024 er: Internatio ID: E.164 add		Alert address: Alert protocol ID:	PC appl via a	abbrev, no. 🖄
Max window queue leng Login orig, type of numb Login orig, number plan	th: 1024 er: Internatio ID: E.164 add		Alert address: Alert protocol ID: Session timeout:	P⊂ appl via a -1	abbrev. no. 💊
Max window queue leng Login orig. type of numb Login orig. number plan Default source address:	th: 1024 Der: Internatio ID: E.164 add		Alert address: Alert protocol ID: Session timeout: Response timeout:	PC appl via a -1 4 2	abbrev, no. 📉
Max window queue leng Login orig. type of numb Login orig. number plan Default source address: Allow alt. source addres	th: 1024 Der: Internatio ID: E.164 add		Alert address: Alert protocol ID: Session timeout: Response timeout: Response poll time:	PC appl via a -1 4 2	abbrev, no. 💌

11

Click  $\ensuremath{\textbf{Save}}$  to save the new connection to the database.

### **Create originating Domain**

Follow these steps to add an originating message domain.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Schemes tab, select the Mobile2App routing scheme.
2	Click <b>Open</b> .
3	Select the <b>Domains</b> tab and click <b>New</b> .
	Result: The New Domain screen opens.
4	In the Name field, enter Originating.
	Result: The screen should look like this:

#### Chapter 9

Step	Action				
	New Doma	រោ		(	×
	Name:	Originating			
			Help Cancel	<u>S</u> ave	1
5	Click Sav	e.			J

Click Save.

# **Configure originating Domain Rule**

Follow these steps to add a rule to the selected address domain.

Step	Action
1	On the Screening tab, select the Originating Address Screening rule and click Add
	Result: The Add Originating Screening Rule screen opens.
2	In the Incoming path name prefix field, enter IS41_CDMA_SME_CDMA Adapter
	This applies the address rule to a single path - the default inbound CDMA path from a handset.
	Result: The Save button becomes available.
3	In the Originating address prefix field, type 023
4	From the Allocate domain drop-down list select Originating.
	Result: The screen should now look like this:

Add Originating Screening Ru	ile	$\mathbf{X}$
Screening selection criteria		
Incoming path name prefix:	1_CDMA_SME_CDMA Adapter	
Originating address prefix:	023	
Screening response		
Allocate domain:	Originating 😽 👻	
O Perform action:	×	
Release cause;	×	
<u></u>	telp Cancel <u>S</u> ave	)
		_



Click **Save** to save the new domain rule to the configuration database.

# **Create destination Domain**

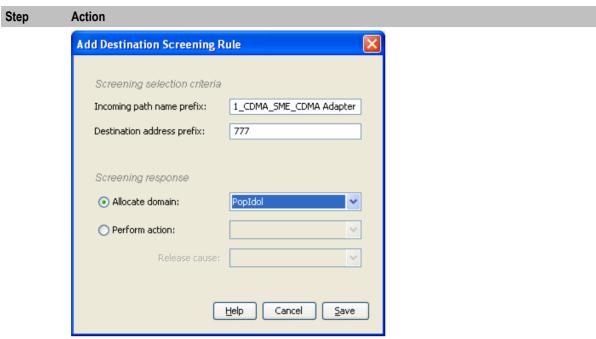
Follow these steps to add a destination message domain.

Step	Action
1	Select the Domains tab of the Mobile2App Scheme screen, and click New.
	Result: The New Domain screen opens.
2	In the Name field, enter PopIdol
	Result: The screen should look like this:
	New Domain
	Name: PopIdol
	Name, Popular
	Help Cancel Save
3	Click Save.

# **Configure destination Domain Rule**

Follow these steps to add a rule to the selected domain.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Screening tab, select the Destination Address Screening rule and click Add
	Result: The Add Destination Screening Rule screen opens.
2	In the Incoming path name prefix field, enter IS41_CDMA_MO_IN_CDMA Adapter
	This applies the address rule to a single path - the default inbound CDMA path from a handset.
	Result: The Save button becomes available.
3	In the Destination Address Prefix field, enter 777
4	Select PopIdol from the Allocate domain drop-down list.
	Result: The screen should look like this:



Click **Save** to save the new domain rule to the configuration database.

# **Create Throttling Rule**

Follow these steps to set the throttling values for the path.

Step	Action
1	Select the Throttling tab and click New.
2	In the Detection Point field, select Submit.
3	In the Originating domain field, select Originating.
4	In the Throttle field, enter 60.
	Result: The screen should look like this:
	New Throttling Rule

New Throttling Rule		×
Detection point:	Submit 🔽	
Destination domain:	~	
Originating domain:	Originating 🔽	
Throttle at:	60 %	
Help Canc	el <u>S</u> ave	

5 Click Save.

# **Configure Trigger Rule**

Follow these steps to configure a trigger rule.

Step	Action
1	On the Triggering tab, from the Detection point drop down list, select Submit.
2	Click New
	Result: The New Trigger Rule screen will open. The Detection point field will be populated with Submit.
3	From the Originating Domain drop down list, select Originating.
4	Select the Route action from the Perform action: drop down list.
5	Coloct the <b>Set reuting aloce</b> about hey and from dran down list, coloct UDB

5 Select the Set routing class check box and from drop down list, select FDA. Result: The screen should look like this:

New Trigger Rule		2
Trigger Selection Criteria		
Detection point:	Submit	
Originating Domain:	Originating	
Originating Address prefix:		
Trigger Processing		
<ul> <li>Perform action:</li> </ul>	Route	
Release cause:		
Set routing class:	FDA	
🔵 Trigger a call plan in ACS		
Use scheduled call plan if	present	
Use this named call plan		
ACS customer:		
Call plan:		
	Please press ENTER after keying customer or call plan names. This will cause the value entered to be retrieved and validated. You can search in either field by entering partial names.	
	Note that a limit of 100 rows is returned in each list. If you cannot find the item you're looking for, please narrow your search criteria.	
	Help Cancel Save	

6

# **Configure deliver Routing Rule**

The Routing rules enable Messaging Manager to have a list of paths to attempt routing over. Messaging Manager will attempt delivery using the first path, second and so on down the list.

Because the FDA routing class was specified in the trigger rule above. Messaging Manager will firstly attempt routing using a Deliver routing rule, then using a Submit routing rule.

Follow these steps to establish a Deliver routing rule with a list of SME paths.

Step	Action	
1	On the Routing tab, from the Routing class drop down list, select Deliver.	
2	Click New	
	<b>Result:</b> The New Routing Rule screen will open. The <b>Routing class</b> field will be populated with Deliver.	
	Note: This represents the first delivery attempt for the FDA.	
3	From the Destination domain drop down list, select PopIdol.	
4	From the Originating domain drop down list, select Originating.	

5 From the Paths sequencing drop down list, select Pop Idol and click Add. Result: The screen should look like this:

Deliver
PopIdol
Originating
<b>~</b>
Retries: 0 Interval: 0 Update
Retries Inte
0 0
~
Move Up Move Down Remove
Help Cancel Save

6

Click Save.

# **Configure submit Routing Rule**

The routing rules enable Messaging Manager to have a list of paths to attempt routing over. Messaging Manager will use the paths in a Submit routing rule after the Deliver leg of FDA routing has failed.

Follow these steps to establish a Submit rule with a list of SMSC paths.

Step	Action
1	On the Routing tab, from the Routing class drop down list, select Submit.
2	Click New
	<b>Result:</b> The New Routing Rule screen will open. The <b>Routing class</b> field will be populated with Submit.
	Note: This represents the second delivery attempt for the FDA.
3	From the Message centre drop down list, select Default.
4	From the Originating domain drop down list, select Originating.
5	From the Paths sequencing drop down list, select SMSC via EMI.
	Note: This represents the Submit attempt part of a failed FDA delivery.
6	Click Add.
7	From the Paths sequencing drop down list, select CDMA SMSC.
	Note: This represents the Default routing path attempt after a failed FDA.
8	Click Add.
9	In the Retries field, enter 3.
10	In the Interval field, enter 3.

Result: The screen should look like this:

Step	Action			
	New Routing Rule			
	Routing class:	Submit		~
	Message centre:	Default		~
	Originating domain:	Originating		×
	Originating address prefix:			
	Paths sequencing			
	CDMA SMSC			~
		Retries: 3 Interval:	3 Upd <u>a</u> t	te
	Path		Retries Inte	
	SMSC via EMI		0 0	
	CDMA SMSC		0 0	
				~
		Move Up Move D	own <u>R</u> emove	
		<u>H</u> elp	Cancel	Save

11 Click Save.

#### **Configure Messaging Manager node**

To enable loading of a routing scheme by Messaging Manager, the scheme is associated with the node listed in the **eserv.config** file.

Follow these steps to associate the scheme just configured with the SCP01 node:

Step	Action
1	From the table on the Nodes tab, select the node, in this example, SCP01.
2	Click Edit.
	Result: The Edit Node screen opens.
3	From the Scheme list, select Mobile2App.
	Result: The screen will look similar to this:

Step	Action		
	Edit Node 'SCP01'		×
	Name:	SCP01	
	IP Address:	192.168.15.117	
	Redirection Port:	4377	
	Description:	Created from Python	
	Scheme:	Gerhard Alke	
		Mobile2ACS Mobile2App	
		Mobile2SMSC Paul	
		Ralphs	
		Roger	
	NIC A:	192.168.15.117	
	NIC B:	192.168.15.117	
	Concatenation Group:	43	
			1
		Help Cancel Save	J
4	Click <b>Save</b> .		
5	Click Close.		
	Result: This example	e configuration is now complete.	

# Mobile to Mobile triggering to ACS

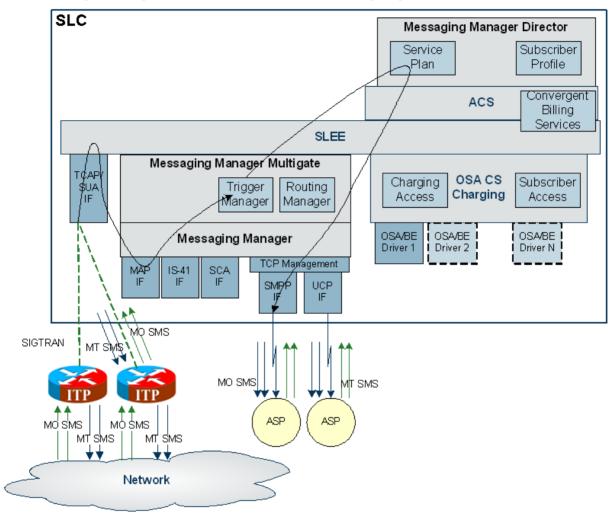
# Description

The Mobile to Mobile messaging (MO SMS) service allows customers to send short messages from one mobile phone to another.

In this example messages will be triggered to an ACS control plan to route large messages to a specific SMSC.

# Diagram

Using the Messaging Manager Multigate and the Messaging Manager Director modules, MM can be configured to provide a Mobile to Mobile service, triggering to ACS. In this example we will receive mobile originating MAP messages and deliver them to SMSCs over MAP having triggered them to ACS to offload all large messages to a separate SMSC. The following diagram shows the modules required:



#### **Process overview**

This table lists the procedures that you need to follow to complete this scenario.

Step	Action
1	Create MAP adapter (on page 166)
2	Create routing scheme (on page 210)
3	Create new message center (on page 210)
4	Create MC path (on page 211)
5	Create MC path SS7 connection (on page 212)
6	Create large MC path (on page 212)
7	Create large MC path connection (on page 213)
8	Create address range (on page 214)
9	Create control plan (on page 214)

Step	Action
10	Create trigger rule (on page 215)
11	Configure standard routing rule (on page 216)
12	Configure large message routing rule (on page 217)
13	Configure Messaging Manager node (on page 218)

### **Create MAP adapter**

The adapter name in the GUI must match exactly the adapterName parameter in the eserv.config for the MAP protocol.

For this example we assume the eserv.config has the following:

```
# Adapter definitions
adapters = [

# First adapter (MAP)
{
    # adapter identifier.
    #
    adapterName = "MAP1"
    .
    }
}
```

Follow these steps to configure a MAP adapter, which will be used for receiving inbound SMSs.

Step	Action
1	Configure the MAP adapter in the MM eserv.config file. For more information, see <i>MM Technical Guide</i> .
2	On the Configuration screen, Adapters tab, click New.
	Result: The New Adapter screen opens.
3	In the Name field, enter MAP1.
4	In the Protocol field, select MAP.
	Result: The screen should look like this:
	New Adapter

		_
MAP1		]
EMI INTERNAL IS41_CDMA IS41_TDMA MAP SIP SMPP		
	Help Cancel Save	
	EMI INTERNAL IS41_CDMA IS41_TDMA MAP SIP	EMI INTERNAL IS41_CDMA IS41_TDMA MAP SIP SMPP

Click Save to save the new adapter record in the configuration database.

### **Create Routing Scheme**

Follow these steps to create a new routing scheme:

Step	Action		
1	On the Configuration screen, Schemes tab, click New		
	Result: The New Scheme screen opens.		
2	In the Name field, enter Mobile2ACS.		
	Result: The Save button becomes available.		
3	In the Description field, type a description for this scheme.		
	<b>Example:</b> Scheme for Mobile to ACS messaging		

Ensure the Also create default domain check box is selected.Result: The screen should look like this:

New Scheme		×
Name:	Mobile2AC5	]
Default network:	Default	]
Description:	Scheme for Mobile to ACS messaging	
	Also create default domain	-
	Help Cancel Save	

5

Click **Save** to save the new scheme record in the configuration database. **Result:** All the required Messaging Manager inbound paths for the MAP protocol are automatically generated by Messaging Manager.

#### **Create new Message Center**

Follow these steps to create a separate message center for large messages.

Step A	Action
1 (	On the Message Centres tab, click New
F	Result: The New Message Centre screen opens.
2 l	n the Message centre name field, enter Large Message Centre.
3 I	n the Service centre address field, enter 122.
F	Result: The Save button will appear, and the screen should look like this:

Step	Action	
	New Message Centre	×
	Message centre name: Service centre address:	Large Message Centre
		Help Cancel Save

4

Click **Save** to save the new message center record to the database.

#### Create MC path

Follow these steps to create a MAP path to the standard SMSC.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Schemes tab, select the Mobile2ACS scheme to add the inbound path
	to.
2	Click <b>Open</b> .
3	Select the Paths tab and click New
	Result: The New Path screen opens.
4	In the Name field, enter MAP SMSC.
5	From the Adapter drop down list, select CDMA1.
	Result: The Save button becomes available.
6	From the Endpoint type drop down list, select MC.
	Result: The screen should now look similar to this:
	New Path

new Paul		
Name:	MAP SMSC	
Adapter:	CDMA1	
Endpoint type:	MC	
Default routing path:	×	
Message centre:	×	
Statistics category:		
	✓ This is a trusted path	
	Help Cancel Save	

7

Click **Save** to save the new path to the configuration database.

#### Create MC path SS7 connection

Follow these steps to add an SS7 connection to the standard SMSC path.

Step	Action	
1	In the table on the Paths tab, select the MAP SMSC path.	
2	Click Add Connection.	
	Result: The New SS7 Connection screen opens.	
3	In the Name field, enter MAP SMSC connection.	
	Result: The Save button becomes available.	
4	Select the Outbound check box.	
5	In the PC field, enter 50	
6	In the SSN field, enter 8	
7	In the GT field, enter 6449393367	
8	In the <b>Weight</b> field, enter 1 (may need to clear the <b>Failover</b> check box first).	
	Note: With a single connection, any non-zero value equates to a maximum loading.	
	Result: The screen should look similar this:	

New SS7 Connection Name: MAP SMSC Connection 🔲 Inbound V Outbound Remote PC: (Any) Match any PC PC: 50 SCCP Calling Party point code (exact match) SCCP Called Party point code. At least one of GT and PC is required. Match any SSN SSN: 8 SCCP Calling Party subsystem number (exact match) SCCP Called Party subsystem number (required) Remote GT: (Any) Match any GT GT: 6449391234 SCCP Calling Party global title (prefix match) SCCP Called Party global title Weight: % 📃 Failover 1 messages Congestion threshold: Congestion backoff: seconds Help Cancel Save

9

Click **Save** to save the new connection to the database.

#### **Create large MC path**

Follow these steps to create a MAP path to the SMSC for large messages.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Schemes tab, select the Mobile2ACS scheme to add the inbound path
	to.
2	Click <b>Open</b> .
3	Select the Paths tab and click New
	Result: The New Path screen opens.
4	In the Name field, enter MAP Large SMSC.
5	From the Adapter drop down list, select CDMA Adapter.

Step	Action			
6	<b>Result</b> : The Save button becomes available. From the <b>Endpoint type</b> drop down list, select MC.			
	New Path		5.	
	Name: Adapter: Endpoint type: Default routing path: Message centre: Statistics category:	MAP Large SMSC CDMA1		
7 Create la	Click Save to save	Help Cancel Save the new path to the configura	ition database.	
7	From the Endpoint ty Result: The screen is New Path Name: Adapter: Endpoint type: Default routing path: Message centre: Statistics category: Click Save to save	rpe drop down list, select MC.         should now look similar to thi         Image SMSC         CDMA1         Image SMSC         CDMA1         Image SMSC         Image		

Follow these steps to add an SS7 connection to the large SMSC path.

Step	Action
1	In the table on the Paths tab, select the MAP Large SMSC path.
2	Click Add Connection.
	Result: The New SS7 Connection screen opens.
3	In the Name field, enter MAP Large SMSC connection
	Result: The Save button becomes available.
4	Select the Outbound check box.
5	In the PC field, enter 51.
6	In the SSN field, enter 8.
7	In the GT field, enter 6449393368.
8	In the Weight field, enter 1 (may need to deselect the Failover check box first).
	Note: With a single connection, any non-zero value equates to a maximum loading.
	Result: The screen should look similar this:

Step	Action		
New SS7 Con	nection		X
Name:	MAP Large SMSC connection		
🔲 Inbound		Vutbound	
Remote PC:	(Any) Match any PC	PC:	51
	SCCP Calling Party point code (exact match)		SCCP Called Party point code. At least one of GT and PC is required.
Remote SSN:	(Any) Match any SSN	SSN:	8
	SCCP Calling Party subsystem number (exact match)		SCCP Called Party subsystem number (required)
Remote GT:	(Any) Match any GT	GT:	6449399876
	SCCP Calling Party global title (prefix match)		SCCP Called Party global title
		Weight:	1 % Failover
		Congestion threshold:	messages
		Congestion backoff:	seconds
			Help Cancel Save

9

Click **Save** to save the new connection to the database.

#### **Create Domain**

Create a domain to identify traffic that will trigger to Messaging Manager Director.

Follow these steps to add a new domain for all MAP inbound MO traffic:

Step	Action		
1	On the Schemes tab, select the Mobile2ACS routing scheme.		
2	Click <b>Open</b> .		
3	Select the Domains tab and click New		
4	In the Name field, enter MAP MO.		
	Result: The screen should look like this:		
	New Domain		
	Name: MAP_MO Help Cancel Save		

5 Click Save.

#### **Create Control Plan**

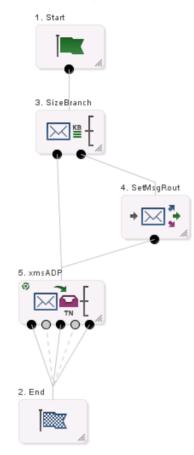
Follow these steps to create a Messaging Manager Director control plan.

Step	Action
1	Open the ACS Control Plan Editor. See CPE User's Guide for details.
2	Select the required customer.
3	Create a control plan using the following nodes:

#### Step Action • Start

- End
- Content Size Branching
- Set Message Routing to set the message center to "Large Message Centre"
- Attempt Delivery Pending

Result: The control plan will look similar to this:



4 **Save** the control plan.

### Create trigger rule

Follow these steps to configure a trigger rule.

Step	Action
1	On the Triggering tab, from the Detection point drop down list, select Submit.
2	Click New
	<b>Result:</b> The New Trigger Rule screen will open. The Detection point field will be populated with Submit.
3	From the Originating Domain drop down list, select SMSC Offload.
4	Select the Trigger a call plan in ACS option.
5	Deselect the Use scheduled call plan if present check box.

Step	Action		
6 7	Select the Use this named Select the ACS customer <i>Control Plan</i> (on page 21	r and control plan named, as created and saved in C	Create
	Result: The screen should	d now look like this:	
	New Trigger Rule		$\mathbf{X}$
	Trigger Selection Criteria		
	Detection point:	Submit 💌	
	Originating Domain:	SMSC Offload	
	Originating Address prefix:		
	Trigger Processing		
	O Perform action:	Route	
	Release cause:	×	
	Set routing class:	Submit	
	<ul> <li>Trigger a call plan in ACS</li> </ul>		
	Use scheduled call plan if j	present	
	Use this named call plan		
	ACS customer:	Telco_Services 🔽 💟	
	Call plan:	SMSC Offload	
		Please press ENTER after keying customer or call plan names. This will cause the value entered to be retrieved and validated. You can search in either field by entering partial names.	
		Note that a limit of 100 rows is returned in each list. If you cannot find the item you're looking for, please narrow your search criteria.	
		Help Cancel Save	

### 8 Click Save.

### Configure standard routing rule

Routing rules enable Messaging Manager to have a list of paths to attempt routing over. Messaging Manager will attempt routing using the first path, second and so on down the list.

Follow these steps to establish a routing rule and list of paths.

Step	Action
1	On the Routing tab, from the Routing class drop down list, select Submit.

Step	Action	
2	Click New	
	<b>Result:</b> The New Routing Rule screen will open. The Routing class field will be populated with Submit.	
3	From the Message centre drop down list, select Default.	
4	From the Originating domain drop down list, select MAP_MO.	
5	From the Paths sequencing drop down list, select MAP SMSC and click Add.	
6	In the Retries field, enter 3.	
7	In the Interval field, enter 3.	
	Result: The screen should look like this:	
	New Routing Rule	

Routing class:	Submit	*
Message centre:	Default	*
Originating domain:	MAP_MO	*
Originating address prefix:		
Paths sequencing		
MAP SMSC	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	-
	Retries: 3 Interval: 3 Upd <u>a</u> te	
Path	Retries Inte	
MAP SMSC	0 0	
	Move Up Move Down <u>R</u> emove	J
	<u>H</u> elp Cancel <u>S</u> ar	ve

8

Click Save.

# Configure routing rule

If the Control Plan determined that the message was a large one, it will have set a different message center, allowing a routing rule to select a special SMSC.

Follow these steps to establish a routing rule and list of paths.

Step	Action
1	On the Routing tab, from the Routing class drop down list, select Submit.
2	Click New
	<b>Result:</b> The New Routing Rule screen will open. The Routing class field will be populated with Submit.

Step	Action
3 4 5 6 7	In the Message centre drop down list, select Large Message Centre. In the Originating domain drop down list, select MAP_MO. From the Paths sequencing drop down list, select MAP Large SMSC and click Add. In the Retries field, enter 3. In the Interval field, enter 3. Result: The screen should look like this:
8	New Routing Rule         Routing class:       Submit         Message centre:       Large Message Centre         Originating domain:       MAP_MO         Originating address prefix:       Image SMSC         Paths sequencing       Image SMSC         Path       Retries:       Image Interval:         Image SMSC       Image Interval:       Image Interval:         MAP Large SMSC       Image Interval:       Image Interval:         Image Interval:       Image Interval:

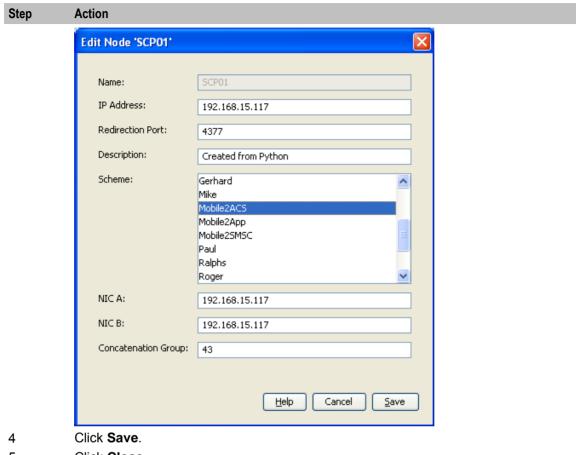
Click Save.

### **Configure Messaging Manager node**

To enable loading of a routing scheme by Messaging Manager, the scheme is associated with the node listed in the **eserv.config** file.

Follow these steps to associate the scheme just configured with the SCP01 node:

Step	Action
1	From the table on the <b>Nodes</b> tab, select the node, in this example, SCP01. See Configure Messaging Manager node (on page 186)).
2	Click Edit
	Result: The Edit Node screen opens.
3	From the drop down list, select Mobile2ACS.
	Result: The screen will look similar to this:



5

Click Close.

Result: This example configuration is now complete.

# **Instant Messaging**

### **Process overview**

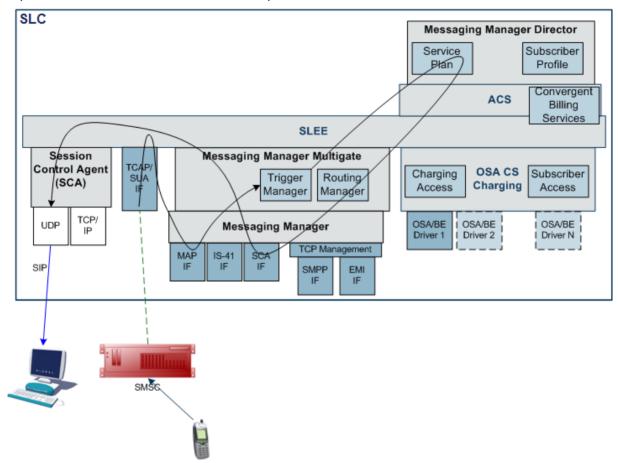
The process required is similar to the Mobile to Mobile triggering to ACS process, but the details are yet to be finalized. However, two procedures which are required for this scenario are listed in this table.

Step	Action
1	Create SCA Adapter (on page 221)
2	Create Control Plan for SIP (on page 222)

### SMS forwarded to SIP

In this scenario, Tom sends a short message to Dick, who has enabled instant message forwarding using some mechanism not relevant to this design. This will forward a copy of the short messages to Dick's SIP user agent.

This is accomplished by executing a control plan that contains the Send Short Message Notification node (SSMN), which allows sending instant messages. The node specifies the destination address in URI format (for example, Dick@imdomain.com). The content and other information about the message is contained in a GenericSM event. This event is sent through the SLEE to the SCA Adapter. The SCA Adapter converts the GenericSM event to a SipSleeEvent and forwards this event to the SCA.



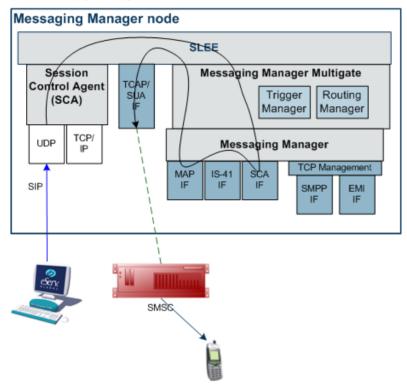
#### SMS to SIP

In this scenario, Tom sends a short message to a special short code (64121) that will forward the short message to Dick's instant message user agent. This scenario is similar to the scenario described above, and the path is the same as shown in that diagram, except that the destination address is specified as part of the message content (for example, "Dick@imdomain.com Watson, come here." The SSMN (or other) node extracts the destination address from the content. The short message is swallowed by MM.

#### SIP to SMS

In this scenario Tom sends an instant message to Dick, addressed to a handset (the E.164 telephone number - for example, 64123402). The SCA converts this message to a SipSleeEvent and passes this to the SCA Adapter. The SCA Adapter creates a GenericSM event and MM routes this to the MAP adapter. The MAP adapter sends a MAP MO-ForwardSM to the SMSC.

In this scenario, Tom uses his E.164 alias (for example, 64123570) as the originating address. This allows a reply through SMS.



#### **Create SCA Adapter**

The adapter name in the GUI *must* match exactly the <code>adapterName</code> parameter in the eserv.config for the SCA protocol.

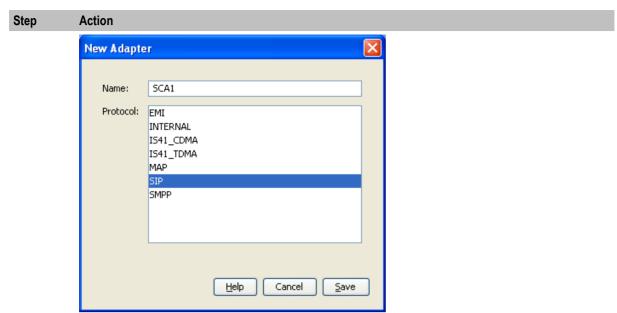
For this example we assume the eserv.config has the following:

```
# Adapter definitions
adapters = [

# SCA (SIP) adapter
{
    # adapter identifier.
    #
    adapterName = "SCA1"
    .
}
```

Follow these steps to configure an SCA adapter, which will be used for receiving inbound SMSs.

Step	Action
1	Configure the SCA adapter in the MM <b>eserv.config</b> file. For more information, see <i>MM Technical Guide</i> .
2	On the Configuration screen, Adapters tab, click New
	Result: The New Adapter screen opens.
3	In the Name field, enter SCA1.
4	In the Protocol field, select SIP.
	Result: The screen should look like this:



5

Click **Save** to save the new adapter record in the configuration database.

#### **Create Control Plan for SIP**

Follow these steps to create a Messaging Manager Director control plan for SIP.

Step	Action
1	Open the ACS Control Plan Editor. See CPE User's Guide for details.
2	Select the required customer.
3	Create a control plan using the following nodes:
	Start
	• End
	Extract Content
	Configure Keyword Search and Replace
	Modify
	• Set
	• Сору
	Accept
	<ul> <li>Set Message Routing - to set the originating and destination domains.</li> </ul>
	Send Short Message Notification
	Reject
	Result: The control plan will look similar to the Example Control Plan for SIP (on page

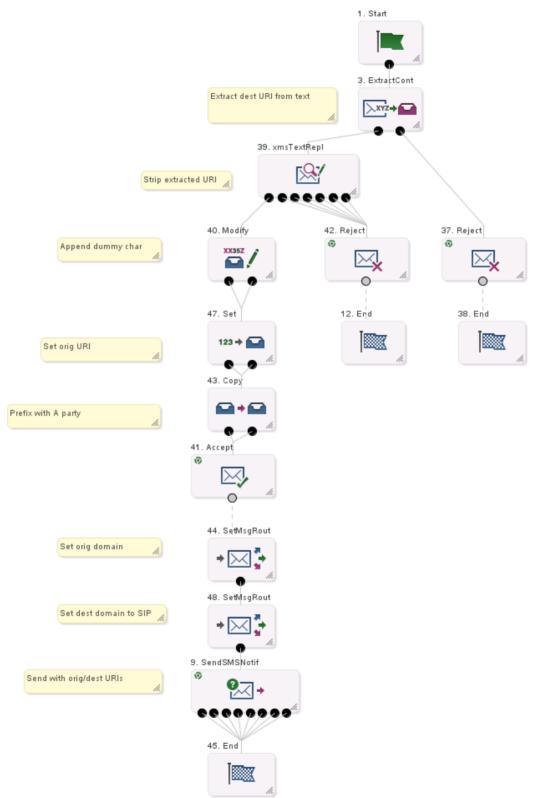
223)

4

Save the control plan.

#### **Example Control Plan for SIP**

Here is an example control plan for SIP.



# Email

#### **Process overview**

Refer to PME Control Plan Scenarios for an explanation of how this is set up.

# **Glossary of Terms**

### AAA

Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting. Specified in Diameter RFC 3588.

## ACS

Advanced Control Services configuration platform.

#### ASP

- Application Service Provider, or
- Application Server Process. An IP based instance of an AS. An ASP implements a SCTP connection between 2 platforms.

#### CDMA

Code Division Multiple Access is a method for describing physical radio channels. Data intended for a specific channel is modulated with that channel's code. These are typically pseudo-random in nature, and possess favourable correlation properties to ensure physical channels are not confused with one another.

#### CDR

Call Data Record

Note: The industry standard for CDR is EDR (Event Detail Record).

#### Connection

Transport level link between two peers, providing for multiple sessions.

#### Convergent

Also "convergent billing". Describes the scenario where post-paid and pre-paid calls are handed by the same service platform and the same billing system. Under strict converged billing, post-paid subscribers are essentially treated as "limited credit pre-paid".

#### CPE

Control Plan Editor (previously Call Plan Editor) - software used to define the logic and data associated with a call -for example, "if the subscriber calls 0800 *nnnnnn* from a phone at location *xxx* then put the call through to *bb bbb bbbb*".

#### Diameter

A feature rich AAA protocol. Utilises SCTP and TCP transports.

#### DTMF

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency - system used by touch tone telephones where one high and one low frequency, or tone, is assigned to each touch tone button on the phone.

### EMI

Exchange Message Interface protocol

### ESN

Electronic Serial Number - a 32bit number uniquely identifying the mobile station equipment.

## FDA

First Delivery Attempt - the delivery of a short message directly to the SME rather than relaying it through the MC.

### FSM

Finite state machine

### GMSC

Gateway MSC. The first MSC which handles a call. For a MOC, this is the caller's attached MSC. For an MTC, this is the first non-transit MSC in the subscriber's network that receives the inbound call.

### GPRS

General Packet Radio Service - employed to connect mobile cellular users to PDN (Public Data Network- for example the Internet).

#### GSM

Global System for Mobile communication.

It is a second generation cellular telecommunication system. Unlike first generation systems, GSM is digital and thus introduced greater enhancements such as security, capacity, quality and the ability to support integrated services.

### GT

Global Title.

The GT may be defined in any of the following formats:

- Type 1: String in the form "1,<noa>,<BCD address digits>"
- Type 2: String in the form "2,<trans type><BCD address digits>"
- Type 3: String in the form "3,<trans type>,<num plan>,<BCD address digits>"
- Type 4: String in the form "4,<trans type>,<num plan>,<noa>,<BCD address digits>"

The contents of the Global Title are defined in the Q713 specification, please refer to section 3.4.2.3 for further details on defining Global Title.

### GUI

Graphical User Interface

### HLR

The Home Location Register is a database within the HPLMN (Home Public Land Mobile Network). It provides routing information for MT calls and SMS. It is also responsible for the maintenance of user subscription information. This is distributed to the relevant VLR, or SGSN (Serving GPRS Support Node) through the attach process and mobility management procedures such as Location Area and Routing Area updates.

#### HPLMN

Home PLMN

#### IMSI

International Mobile Subscriber Identifier. A unique identifier allocated to each mobile subscriber in a GSM and UMTS network. It consists of a MCC (Mobile Country Code), a MNC (Mobile Network Code) and a MSIN (Mobile Station Identification Number).

The IMSI is returned by the HLR query (SRI-SM) when doing FDA. This tells the MSC exactly who the subscriber is that the message is to be sent to.

#### IN

Intelligent Network

#### INAP

Intelligent Network Application Part - a protocol offering real time communication between IN elements.

#### IP

1) Internet Protocol

2) Intelligent Peripheral - This is a node in an Intelligent Network containing a Specialized Resource Function (SRF).

#### IP address

Internet Protocol Address - network address of a card on a computer.

#### IS-41

Interim Standard 41 is a signaling protocol used in cellular telecommunications systems. It deals with the signalling between the MSC and other network elements for the purpose of handovers and roaming etc.

#### ISDN

Integrated Services Digital Network - set of protocols for connecting ISDN stations.

#### ISUP

ISDN User Part - part of the SS7 protocol layer and used in the setting up, management, and release of trunks that carry voice and data between calling and called parties.

#### ITU

International Telecommunication Union

#### LMSI

The subscriber's Local Mobile Subscriber Identity. When the subscriber is roaming, FDA uses both a LMSI and an IMSI.

#### MAP

Mobile Application Part - a protocol which enables real time communication between nodes in a mobile cellular network. A typical usage of the protocol would be for the transfer of location information from the VLR to the HLR.

#### MC

Message Centre. Also known as SMSC.

#### MCC

Mobile Country Code. In the location information context, this is padded to three digits with leading zeros. Refer to ITU E.212 ("Land Mobile Numbering Plan") documentation for a list of codes.

#### **Messaging Manager**

The Messaging Manager service and the Short Message Service components of Oracle Communications Convergent Charging Controller product. Component acronym is MM (formerly MMX).

#### MIN

Mobile Identification Number, also known as an MSID.

#### MM

Messaging Manager. Formerly MMX, see also *XMS* (on page 232) and *Messaging Manager* (on page 228).

#### MNC

Mobile Network Code. The part of an international address following the mobile country code (MCC), or at the start of a national format address. This specifies the mobile network code, that is, the operator owning the address. In the location information context, this is padded to two digits with a leading zero. Refer to ITU E.212 ("Land Mobile Numbering Plan") documentation for a list of codes.

#### **MNP**

Mobile Number Portability

#### MO

Mobile Originated

#### MOC

Managed Object Class

#### MSC

Mobile Switching Centre. Also known as a switch.

### MSID

Mobile Subscriber Identification, also known as an MIN.

#### MSIN

Mobile Station Identification Number.

#### МΤ

Mobile Terminated

#### MTC

Mobile Terminated Call. The part of the call associated with a subscriber receiving an inbound call.

#### MTP

Message Transfer Part (part of the SS7 protocol stack).

#### PC

Point Code. The Point Code is the address of a switching point.

#### Peer

Remote machine, which for our purposes is capable of acting as a Diameter agent.

#### PLMN

Public Land Mobile Network

#### SCA

1) Service Centre Address

2) Session Control Agent for Session Initiation Protocol (SIP)

### SCCP

Signalling Connection Control Part (part of the SS7 protocol stack).

### **SCCP Address**

Is made up of PC + SSN + GT; or PC +SSN; or GT; or GT + PC.

#### SCP

Service Control Point. Also known as SLC.

#### SCTP

Stream Control Transmission Protocol. A transport-layer protocol analogous to the TCP or User Datagram Protocol (UDP). SCTP provides some similar services as TCP (reliable, in-sequence transport of messages with congestion control) but adds high availability.

### **Service Provider**

See Telco.

#### Session

Diameter exchange relating to a particular user or subscriber access to a provided service (for example, a telephone call).

### SGSN

Serving GPRS Support Node

#### SIP

Session Initiation Protocol - a signaling protocol for Internet conferencing, telephony, event notification and instant messaging. (IETF)

### SLC

Service Logic Controller (formerly UAS).

### SLEE

Service Logic Execution Environment

#### SMDPP

SMSDeliveryPointToPoint SM-TL Message.

### SME

Short Message Entity - an entity which may send or receive Short Messages. It may be located in a fixed network, a mobile, or an SMSC.

### SMPP

Short Message Peer-to-Peer protocol

### SMS

Depending on context, can be:

- Service Management System hardware platform
- Short Message Service
- Service Management System platform
- Convergent Charging Controller Service Management System application

#### SMSC

Short Message Service Centre - stores and forwards a short message to the indicated destination subscriber number.

### SMS-MT

Short Message Service Mobile Terminating

### SM-TL

Short Message Transport Layer.

#### SRF

Specialized Resource Function – This is a node on an IN which can connect to both the SSP and the SLC and delivers additional special resources into the call, mostly related to voice data, for example play voice announcements or collect DTMF tones from the user. Can be present on an SSP or an Intelligent Peripheral (IP).

#### SRI

Send Routing Information - This process is used on a GSM network to interrogate the HLR for subscriber routing information.

#### SS7

A Common Channel Signalling system used in many modern telecoms networks that provides a suite of protocols which enables circuit and non circuit related information to be routed about and between networks. The main protocols include MTP, SCCP and ISUP.

#### SSN

Subsystem Number. An integer identifying applications on the SCCP layer.

For values, refer to 3GPP TS 23.003.

#### SSP

Service Switching Point

#### SUA

Signalling Connection Control Part User Adaptation Layer

#### System Administrator

The person(s) responsible for the overall set-up and maintenance of the IN.

#### TCAP

Transaction Capabilities Application Part – layer in protocol stack, message protocol.

#### ТСР

Transmission Control Protocol. This is a reliable octet streaming protocol used by the majority of applications on the Internet. It provides a connection-oriented, full-duplex, point to point service between hosts.

#### TDMA

Time Division Multiple Access - a communications technique that uses a common channel for communications among multiple users by allocating each a unique time slot.

#### Telco

Telecommunications Provider. This is the company that provides the telephone service to customers.

### **Telecommunications Provider**

See Telco.

### URI

Uniform Resource Identifier.

# VLR

Visitor Location Register - contains all subscriber data required for call handling and mobility management for mobile subscribers currently located in the area controlled by the VLR.

### VMP

Virtual Message Point

### VMSC

Visited Mobile Switching Centre

### XMS

Three letter code used to designate some components and path locations used by the Oracle Communications Convergent Charging Controller *Messaging Manager* (on page 228) service and the Short Message Service. The published code is *MM* (on page 228) (formerly MMX).

# Index

### Α

AAA • 225 About This Document • vii About user authorization for local and remote connections • 86 Accept action • 30 Access templates • 36 Accessing Messaging Manager Action and Error Codes • 139 Accessing Routing Scheme Edit Control • 161 Accessing the application • 34 Accessing the Configuration screen • 39 Accessing the Messaging Manager Replication screen • 136 Accessing the Messaging Manager Scheme screen • 73 ACS • 225 ACS description • 11 Action and Error Codes • 100, 103, 139 Actions available • 147, 148 Adapters • 4, 6, 46, 68, 73, 75 Adapters fields • 76, 77, 78 Adapters tab • 76 Adding a Path Prefix • 115 Adding a rule • 106 Adding adapters • 76 Adding Address rules • 115, 116, 117 Adding ASP accounts or templates • 65 Adding ASP groups • 61 Adding ASP parameters • 59 Adding domains • 116, 118 Adding EMI connections • 88 Adding error mapping - IP • 155 Adding error mapping - MAP, IS-41 • 147, 149, 156 Adding Global Release Cause • 142 Adding interfaces • 79 Adding IP addresses • 43 Adding IP connections in ASPs • 69 Adding nodes • 44 Adding paths • 84 Adding release cause mapping - IP • 150 Adding release cause mapping - MAP, IS-41 • 147. 148. 151 Adding RLV Prefix Rules • 113 Adding Routing rules • 129 Adding SCA Consistency Rules • 107 Adding schemes • 50 Adding Screening rules • 103, 110 Adding SMPP connections • 92 Adding SMSCs • 55 Adding SS7 connections • 96 Adding Throttling rules • 121 Adding Triggering rules • 125

Address Domains • 6, 7, 27, 46, 74, 120 Addressing • 46, 74, 114 Addressing tab • 115 Adjust connection weightings • 86 Adjusting panel displays • 74, 81, 99 Application to Mobile diagram • 175 Application to Mobile Messaging • 174 Applying throttling • 29 ASP • 225 ASP accounts • 24 ASP Groups • 39, 61, 64 ASP groups and parameter defaults • 25. 58 ASP Groups and Parameters • 24, 56, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 65, 66, 67 ASP groups and templates • 24 ASP groups fields • 61 ASP Groups tab • 61 ASP Parameters • 39, 56, 61, 64 ASP parameters fields • 57, 59, 60, 65, 67 ASP Parameters tab • 57 ASPs • 39, 64, 82 ASPs fields • 64 ASPs tab • 64 Assign default routing path to inbound CDMA path • 190, 194 Audience • vii

# В

Behaviour • 21

### С

Calling Party Filter • 25, 100, 101, 105 CDMA • 225 CDR • 225 Changing connection passwords • 86, 95 Columns • 162 Command type • 19 Common connection fields • 87, 89, 91, 93, 94 Components • 12 Configuration options • 46 Configuration Overview • 5 Configuration Scenarios • 33, 40, 140, 162, 165 Configuration sequence • 33 Configure deliver Routing Rule • 191, 204 Configure destination Domain Rule • 201 Configure inbound path EMI connection • 190, 198 Configure Messaging Manager node • 175, 186, 191, 206, 209, 218 Configure originating Domain Rule • 190, 191, 200 Configure outbound path EMI connection • 190, 196 Configure routing rule • 175, 185, 209, 217 Configure SS7 SMSC path connection • 190, 193 Configure standard routing rule • 209, 216

Configure submit Routing Rule • 191, 205 Configure Trigger Rule • 175, 184, 191, 203 Configuring Messaging Manager replication • 137 Configuring MM replication • 135 Congestion Control • 6, 7, 29 Connection • 225 Connection and path identification • 17 Connections • 16 Convergent • 225 Copying schemes • 47, 48 Copyright • ii CPE • 225 CPE description • 11 Create address range • 175, 181 Create CDMA Adapter • 185, 190, 191 Create Control Plan • 208, 214, 216 Create Control Plan for SIP • 219, 222 Create destination Domain • 191, 201 Create domain • 166, 172 Create Domain • 208, 214 Create EMI Adapter • 175, 176 Create EMI ASP connection • 175, 180 Create EMI ASP path • 175, 179 Create EMI SMSC connection • 175, 178 Create EMI SMSC path • 175, 177, 190, 197 Create large MC path • 208, 212 Create large MC path connection • 208, 213 Create MAP adapter • 166, 208, 209 Create MC path • 208, 211 Create MC path SS7 connection • 208, 212 Create Message Center • 166, 168 Create new Message Center • 208, 210 Create originating Domain • 199 Create outbound path • 190, 195 Create Routing Scheme • 166, 167, 175, 176, 190, 192, 208, 210 Create SCA Adapter • 219, 221 Create SMPP adapter • 166, 168 Create SMSC connection • 166, 170 Create SMSC path • 166, 169, 190, 193 Create Submit routing rule • 173 Create Throttling Rule • 175, 184, 191, 202 Create trigger rule • 209, 215

# D

Database configuration • 33 Default control plans • 13 Default routing • 6, 21, 32 Defining SMSCs • 24 Delete Screening rules • 104 Deleting adapters • 78 Deleting ASP accounts and templates • 67 Deleting ASP groups • 63 Deleting ASP Parameters • 60 Deleting connections • 87 Deleting domains • 119

Deleting error mapping • 147, 149, 159 Deleting Global Release Cause • 143 Deleting interfaces • 80 Deleting IP connection in ASPs • 71 Deleting nodes • 45 Deleting paths • 85 Deleting release cause mapping • 147, 149, 154 Deleting RLV Prefix Rules • 114 Deleting Routing rules • 133 Deleting SCA Consistency Rules • 108 Deleting schemes • 51 Deleting screening rules • 111 Deleting SMSCs • 56 Deleting Throttling Rules • 122 Deleting Triggering rules • 127 Deliver • 22 Deliver and Notify transactions • 22, 23 Deliver routing • 32 Deliver type • 19 Delivery Sequence Correlation • 25, 26, 100, 101 Deployment diagram • 2 Description • 165, 174, 187, 207 Destination Address Screening • 25, 26, 101, 109 Determining the best match submit routing rule 32 Diagram • 208 Diameter • 225 Discard action • 30 Document Conventions • viii Domain classification • 28 DTMF • 225

### Е

Editing adapters • 77 Editing address rules • 117 Editing ASP accounts and templates • 66 Editing ASP groups • 62 Editing ASP parameters • 59 Editing domains • 118 Editing EMI connections • 91 Editing error mapping - IP • 157 Editing error mapping - MAP, IS-41 • 147, 149, 158 Editing Global Release Cause • 142 Editing interfaces • 80 Editing IP addresses • 43 Editing IP connections in ASPs • 69 Editing networks • 53 Editing nodes • 44 Editing paths • 84 Editing release cause mapping - IP • 152 Editing release cause mapping - MAP, IS-41 • 147, 148, 153 Editing RLV Prefix Rules • 113

Editing Routing rules • 132 Editing SCA Consistency Rules • 108 Editing scheme controls • 163 Editing schemes • 50 Editing screening rules • 111 Editing Screening rules • 104 Editing SMPP connections • 94 Editing SMSCs • 55 Editing SS7 connections • 98 Editing Throttling Rules • 121 Editing Triggering rules • 126 Email • 224 EMI • 144. 226 EMI connection fields • 89, 91 EMI fields • 145, 150, 151, 153, 156, 158 EMI tab • 145 Error Mapping • 155 ESN • 226 Example address classification • 28 Example Control Plan for SIP • 222, 223 Example Edit EMI Connection dialog • 92 Example Edit SMPP Connection dialog • 70, 95 Example network • 34

## F

FDA • 23, 226 Finding a rule • 105 Finding RLV Prefix Rules • 112, 113, 114 Finding SCA Consistency Rules • 107, 108 FSM • 226

# G

Global Action and Error Codes • 140 Global fields • 141, 142, 143, 151, 152, 156, 157 Global tab • 110, 124, 141, 144, 145, 146, 147, 150 Global Title Screening Rules • 26, 101, 105 Global Title Screening Rules panel • 105 GMSC • 226 GPRS • 226 GSM • 226 GT • 226 GUI • 226

### Η

HLR • 227 HPLMN • 227

### I

IMSI • 227 IN • 227 In and Outbound • 97 INAP • 227 Inbound • 97 Inbound paths • 15 Incoming classification (addressing) • 5, 6 Incoming classification diagram • 7 Instant Messaging • 14, 219 Interfaces • 46, 73, 78 Interfaces and nodes • 10, 79, 80 Interfaces fields • 79 Interfaces panel • 79 Introduction • 1, 5, 12, 15, 18, 20, 24, 27, 29, 31, 33, 39, 41, 45, 52, 54, 56, 61, 64, 75, 78, 80, 85, 98, 105, 106, 109, 111, 114, 119, 122, 128, 135, 136, 137, 139, 140, 143, 144, 146, 147, 149, 150, 155, 161 IP • 227 IP address • 227 IP address fields • 43, 44 IP connection fields - ASPs tab • 68 IP connections • 68 IP Connections • 70, 85, 87 IP paths • 16 IS-41 • 147, 151, 153, 156, 158, 227 IS-41 fields • 148, 152, 154, 157, 159 IS-41 tab • 148 ISDN • 227 Isolated Delivery • 25, 26, 101, 102 **ISUP • 227** ITU • 227

# L

Layer Address Correlation • 25, 26, 101, 102, 106, 107 LMSI • 228 Locate • 23 Logging into SMS • 35

## Μ

MAP • 146, 151, 153, 156, 158, 228 MAP fields • 146, 152, 154, 157, 159 MAP tab • 146 MC • 228 MCC • 228 Message control plan • 12 Message Control Plan options • 30 Message processing • 6, 7 Message processing diagram • 9 Message Routing and Processing • 15 Messaging Manager • 228, 232 Messaging Manager Action and Error Codes • 8, 36, 139 Messaging Manager components • 3 Messaging Manager Components • 3 Messaging Manager Configuration screen • 40 Messaging Manager Configuration Screen • 36, 39 Messaging Manager Director • 3 Messaging Manager features • 3 Messaging Manager Manager • 5 Messaging Manager menu options • 36

Messaging Manager Multigate • 4 Messaging Manager Navigator • 5 Messaging Manager Replication • 135 Messaging Manager Replication screen • 137 Messaging Manager Replication Screen • 36, 135, 136 Messaging Manager Routing Scheme Edit Control • 36, 161 Messaging Manager Scheme Screen • 73 Messaging Manager Schemes • 46, 48, 73 Messaging Manager Screens • 33 Messaging Manager User access template • 37 MIN • 228 MM • 228, 232 MM run time synchronization • 135 MNC • 228 MNP • 228 MO • 228 MO SMS diagram • 166 Mobile to Application diagram • 190 Mobile to Application Messaging • 187 Mobile to Mobile triggering to ACS • 207 Mobile to SMSC Messaging • 165 MOC • 228 Monitoring screening rules • 25, 98, 99, 100 MSC • 228 MSID • 229 **MSIN • 229** MT • 229 MTC • 229 MTP • 229

### Ν

Naming conventions • 41 Networks • 39, 52 Networks columns • 52 Networks fields • 52 Networks tab • 52 Nodes • 39, 41 Nodes fields • 42, 45 Nodes tab • 42 Notify type • 19

# 0

Opening schemes • 47, 73 Originating Address Screening • 25, 27, 101, 102, 109 Other path buttons • 82 Outbound • 97 Outbound paths • 16 Outbound routing • 6, 9 Outbound routing diagram • 10 Overview • 1, 15, 33, 39, 73, 135, 139, 161, 165

### Ρ

Package structure • 12 Path Connections • 46, 69, 85

Path screen fields • 25, 82, 84, 85, 101 Paths • 15, 46, 74, 80 Paths and Connections • 6, 15, 69, 70, 71 Paths tab • 81 Paths tab buttons • 81 Paths tab columns • 81 PC • 229 Peer • 229 Platform Support • 11 **PLMN • 229** Preconfigured Packages • 12 Pre-populated screen areas • 115 Prerequisites • vii Process overview • 166, 175, 190, 208, 219, 224 Processing model • 1

# R

Reject action • 30 Related Documents • vii Relay action • 31 Release Cause and Error Mappings panels • 140 Release Cause Mapping • 150 Removing a Path Prefix • 116 Removing a rule • 106 Removing Address rules • 117 Removing IP addresses • 44 Replication • 137 RLV Prefix Rules • 27, 103, 111 RLV Prefix Rules panel • 112 Roaming Location Validation • 25, 27, 101, 102, 112 Route action • 31 Route Unchanged action • 31 RouteInfo • 19 Routing • 6, 9, 31, 46, 74, 128 Routing Class • 6, 13, 20, 124 Routing class overview • 20 Routing fields • 128, 132, 133 Routing Scheme Edit Control • 161 Routing Scheme Edit Control tab • 162 Routing schemes • 6 Routing tab • 128 Rules buttons • 105, 107, 112

### S

SCA • 229 SCA Consistency Rules • 27, 102, 106 SCA Consistency Rules panel • 106 SCCP • 229 SCCP Address • 229 Scheme fields • 49, 51 Scheme tabs • 73 Schemes • 39, 42, 45, 68 Schemes buttons • 47 Schemes columns • 47 Schemes tab • 47 Scope • vii SCP • 229 Screening • 6, 46, 74, 98 Screening rule fields • 100, 103 Screening rule list • 25, 100 Screening rule panel buttons • 109 Screening Rules • 7, 25, 26, 27, 102, 109, 123, 124 Screening Rules fields • 109, 110, 111 Screening Rules panel • 109 Screening tab • 99 Screening tab columns • 99 SCTP • 229 Service Provider • 230 Services Menu • 36 Session • 230 Setting the scene • 187 SGSN • 230 Signalling paths • 16 SIP • 149, 230 SIP fields • 150, 151, 153, 156, 158 SIP tab • 149 SIP to SMS • 220 SLC • 230 SLEE • 230 SMDPP • 230 SME • 230 SMF database synchronisation • 135 SMPP • 143, 230 SMPP connection fields • 93, 94 SMPP fields • 144, 151, 153, 156, 158 SMPP tab • 144 SMS • 230 SMS forwarded to SIP • 219 SMS Login screen • 35 SMS main screen • 36 SMS to SIP • 220 SMSC • 230 SMSCs • 6, 24, 39, 54, 83 SMSCs fields • 55 SMSCs tab • 54 SMS-MT • 230 SM-TL • 231 SRF • 231 SRI • 231 SS7 • 231 SS7 connection fields • 96, 97, 98 SS7 connection matching rules • 18 SS7 Connections • 86, 96 SSN • 231 SSP • 231 Starting the Messaging Manager Screens • 34 SUA • 231 Submit • 21 Submit routing • 32 Submit transactions • 22, 23

Submit type • 19 Summary • 20 System Administrator • 231 System Overview • 1

#### Т

TCAP • 231 TCP • 231 TDMA • 231 Telco • 231 **Telecommunications Provider • 232** Throttling • 46, 74, 119 Throttling rules • 29 Throttling rules fields • 120, 121 Throttling tab • 120 Title • 58 Transaction Types • 6, 18, 20, 120, 123 Trigger control • 122 Trigger rules • 29 Triggering • 6, 8, 29, 46, 74, 122, 124 Triggering fields • 123, 126, 127 Triggering tab • 123 Typographical Conventions • viii

# U

URI • 232 User Access Control • 36

# V

Virtual SMSCs • 96 VLR • 232 VMP • 232 VMSC • 232

### W

What is Messaging Manager? • 1 When is a Delivery Report produced? • 11

# Х

XMS • 228, 232